



GUIDE

New Hello!

By a group of supervisors

الصف الأول الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الأول



ENGLISH



التطبيق التفاعلى للتعلم عن بعد

1st Prep.
2022
FIRST TERM



Check your English

WB pages 70 and 71

Vocabulary

age (n)	عمر / سن	jump (ed) (v)	يقفز
favourite (adj)	مفضل	weather (n)	الطقس
toy animal (n)	حيوان لعبة	rainy (adj)	ممطر
park (n)	حديقة عامة	restaurant (n)	مطعم
sports (n)	ألعاب رياضية	twice (adv)	مرتين
cook (n)	طباخ	tail (n)	ذيل
gate (n)	بوابة	shop (n)	محل

1 This is a fact file of some students. Look and make sentences.

1. Name : Basel
   Age : 12
   Likes : football
   Favourite food : fish with rice

2. Name : Fatma
   Age : 13
   Likes : books
   Favourite food : chicken

3. Name : Maher and Hany
   Age : 12
   Likes : tennis
   Favourite food : ice cream

4. Name : ....
   Age : ....
   Likes : ....
   Favourite food : ....

1. His name is Basel. He is twelve. He likes football. His favourite food is fish with rice.
2. ....
3. ....

2 Complete fact file 4 for you and write sentences like those in Exercise 1.

4. ....

3 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة. (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. The bag is ....
   a. new b. Injy's c. Lama's d. Lama's sister's

2. The pencil case is ....
   a. red   b. blue   c. yellow   d. green
3. Lama has got ....
   a. a book about sport   b. a toy animal
   c. an English book   d. a book about animals
4. She has also got ....
   a. some oranges   b. an orange   c. an apple   d. a ball
5. The girls are in ....
   a. a school   b. a house   c. a park   d. a shop

4 Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences :

1. Hatem don't like sports. Hatem doesn't like sports.
2. I want play tennis this afternoon. ....
3. Look ! Those children jumping very high. ....
4. I visit my cousins yesterday. ....
5. You speak English very good. ....

5 Read the text, then answer the questions :

Mr Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Friday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch: chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant near the school. He loves the food **there**. The cook makes it all himself.

1. Where does Mr Taha work ?

   He works in a school in Port Said.
2. What does he usually eat for lunch ?

   ....
3. What does he usually do twice a week ?

   ....
4. Why did Mr Taha not want to walk home yesterday ?

   ....

5. Is the weather always rainy in Port Said ?

....

6. Who makes the food in the restaurant ?

....

7. What does the underlined word **there** refer to ?

....

6 Do these words have the same sound ? Listen and put (✓) or (✗).

هل هذه الكلمات تحتوى على نفس الصوت ؟ استمع إلى معلمك وضع علامة (✓) أو (✗). (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. washed / talked ☐
2. called / waited ☐
3. blue / duck ☐
4. cake / home ☐
5. shop / chick ☐
6. father / brother ☐
7. candy /July ☐
7. tail / gate ☐

7 What did they do at the weekend ? Look at the table and answer the questions.

	Friday	Saturday
Ashraf	play football	visit cousins
Yunis	bake a cake	work in his father's shop
Riham	visit friends	play tennis

1. Did Yunis play football on Friday ? No, he didn't. He baked a cake.
2. Did Ashraf work in his father's shop on Saturday ? ....
3. What did Ashraf do on Friday ? ....
4. Did Riham visit her cousins on Friday ? ....
5. Where did Yunis go on Saturday ? ....
6. What did Riham do on Saturday ? ....

8 Write about your weekend. What do you usually do ? What did you do yesterday ?

....

....

....

....

UNIT 1

My family and me

SB pages 2-11 WB pages 72-78

Objectives

- **Reading :**
  An interview with twins; Heidi; a text about a gymnast
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph on hobbies; a person in your family
- **Listening :**
  An interview with twins
- **Speaking :**
  Talking about your family; asking questions
- **Language :**
  Pronouns; present simple
- **Life Skills :**
  Self-management
- **Values :**
  Love of family
- **Issues :**
  Awareness of rights and duties; loyalty and belonging



(Master your term!)



- علامة تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
- علامة تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

LESSONS **1 & 2**

SB pages 2 - 5 WB pages 72 & 73



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

sport (n)	رياضة	twins (n)	توأم
band (n)	فرقة موسيقية	quiz (n)	امتحان موجز / قصير
voluntary (adj)	تطوعي	interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية
research (n)	بحث	hobby (n)	هواية
diary (n)	مفكرة يومية	chess (n)	لعبة الشطرنج
drums (n)	طبول		

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 72

great-grandchildren	أبناء الحفيد - الحفيدة	football player (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
baby cousin (n)	ابن / ابنة العم / العمة / الخال / الخالة (الرضيع)	discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش
		both	كلًا من / كلاهما
skim (med) (v)	يتصفح (بسرعة)	work (ed) (v) , (n)	يعمل - عمل (اسم لا يعد)
parents (n)	الوالدين	clap (ped) (v)	يصفق

Lesson 2

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 73

children's hospital (n)	مستشفى أطفال	age (n)	عمر / سن
glossary (n)	قاموس / معجم	favourite (adj)	مفضل
musical instruments (n)	آلات موسيقية	dictionary (n)	قاموس
What kind .... ?	ما نوع ... ؟	match (n)	مباراة
story (n)	قصة	together (adv)	معًا / سويًا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
write	يكتب	wrote	written
tell	يخبر	told	told
show	يوضح / يبين	showed	shown
find	يجد	found	found
say	يقول	said	said
meet	يقابل	met	met
win	يفوز	won	won
drive	يقود	drove	driven
throw	يرمى	threw	thrown
hit	ينقر	hit	hit

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
true	حقيقى	false	مزيف
different (from)	مختلف عن	the same (as)	نفس الشىء / مطابق
first	الأول	last	الأخير
finish	ينهى	start	يبدأ
show	يوضح	hide	يُخفى
male	ذكر	female	أنثى

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

Family members أفراد العائلة		
aunt	your mother's or father's sister	خالة / عمة
uncle	your mother's or father's brother	خال / عم
grandfather	your mother's or father's father	جد
grandmother	your mother's or father's mother	جدة
brother	your parent's son / a boy or man with the same parents as you	أخ

sister	your parent's daughter / a girl or woman with the same parents as you	أخت
cousin	your aunt and uncle's child	ابن / ابنة (العم / العمة / الخال / الخالة)
parents	your mum and dad	الوالدين
son	a boy child	ابن
daughter	a girl child	ابنه
dad	another word for father	اب
mum	another word for mother	ام
great-grandfather	your grandfather's father	الجد الأكبر
great-grandchildren	the children of your grandchildren	أبناء الحفيد / الحفيدة
	Other definitions تعريفات أخرى	
swimming	moving your body through water	سباحة
drums	a musical instrument which you hit with your hands or a stick to make a noise	طبول
twins	two children born at the same time	توأم
voluntary work	work you do without getting money	عمل تطوعى
football match	a game of football	مباراة كرة قدم
chess	a board game for two people	لعبة الشطرنج
band	a group of people singing and/or playing musical instruments together	فرقة موسيقية
basketball	a ball sport for two teams of five players. To play basketball, you throw the ball through a net	كرة السلة

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

do	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعى	**listen to**	music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى
	work	يؤدى عمل		the teacher	يستمع إلى المعلم
go	swimming	يمارس السباحة		the radio	يستمع إلى الراديو
have	a hobby	لديه هواية	**watch**	a football match	يشاهد مباراة كرة قدم
make	a noise	يُحدث ضوضاء			

II Reading and Listening

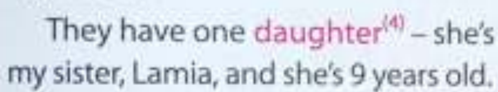


on Lesson 1 SB page 3



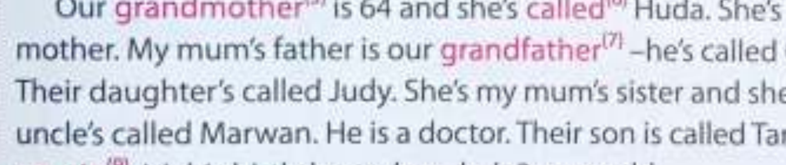
Hello ! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a picture(1) of my family.

My mum's name is Amira. She's a teacher. Next to her is my dad. His name is Adel. He's a teacher, too. Both(2) my parents(3) are teachers at my school.



They have one daughter(4) – she's my sister, Lamia, and she's 9 years old.

And they have two sons – me, and my brother, Khaled. He's 11.



Our grandmother(5) is 64 and she's called(6) Huda. She's my mum's mother. My mum's father is our grandfather(7) –he's called Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy. She's my mum's sister and she's my aunt(8). My uncle's called Marwan. He is a doctor. Their son is called Tarek, and he's my cousin(9). It's his birthday today – he's 3 years old.

Check Vocabulary

(1) صورة	(2) كلاهما	(3) الوالدين	(4) ابنة	(5) جدة
(6) تُسمى / تُدعى	(7) جد	(8) عمة / خالة	(9) ابن العم / الخال / العمة / الخالة	



on Lesson 1 WB page 72



Lara : Hi ! My name's Lara and this is my family. That's my brother. His name's Ayman. Lina and Hatem are our parents. We have one cousin, Khadeeja. Her parents are my uncle and aunt. Their names are Imad and Dina. What about you ? What's your name ?



on Lesson 2 SB page 4

An interview with twin brothers



Meet Hazem and Hatem. They are brothers and they are both aged[1] 12. They have the same[2] parents[3] and the same birthday. They're twins[4]!

What are your hobbies[5] ?

Hazem : I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays. I go swimming on Tuesdays and I play football[6] on Saturdays.

Hatem : And he watches football matches on TV on Saturday evenings. He loves football!

Hazem : I love football!

Hatem : I don't like football but I like music. I play the drums[7] and I listen to music.

Hazem : He plays the drums in a band[8].



Do you have any hobbies that you both like ?

Hazem : We play chess together[9] on Saturdays. Hatem usually wins.

Hatem : Yes, that's true! And on Saturday afternoons we do voluntary work[10].

What kind of voluntary work ?

Hazem : We help in the children's hospital.

Hatem : We play games with the children and read them stories. It's great!

Check Vocabulary

(1) يبلغ من العمر	(2) نفس الشيء	(3) الوالدين	(4) توأم	(5) هوايات
(6) كرة قدم	(7) طبول	(8) فرقة موسيقية	(9) معًا	(10) عمل تطوعي





• on Lesson 2 SB page 5

Interviewer : Can I ask you some more questions ?
Hazem : Yes, of course.
Interviewer : Hazem, when do you play basketball ?
Hazem : I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays.
Interviewer : And when do you play football ?
Hazem : I play football on Saturdays and I watch football matches on the TV on Saturday evenings.
Interviewer : When do you go swimming ?
Hazem : I go swimming on Tuesdays.
Interviewer : Wow, you are busy ! Hatem, when do you play the drums ?
Hatem : I play the drums on Mondays at home. And I play the drums in a band on Thursdays.
Interviewer : What do you do on Tuesdays and Wednesdays ?
Hatem : I listen to music. I like pop music.
Interviewer : What do you do on Saturdays ?
Hatem : I help my mother and I do voluntary work with Hazem. And on Sundays I play chess with Hazem or my dad.
Interviewer : Thank you both.
Hazem : You're welcome.

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 both / all

* **both** كلاهما (تدل على شخصين أو شيئين معًا)

ex.: - Where are Ali and Ashraf ?
- They **both** went to the club.

* **all** كل / جميعًا (تدل على عدد أكثر من شخصين أو شيئين)

ex.: - Where are Ali, Ashraf and Tarek ?
- They **all** went to the club.

2 **(be) called** يُسمى / يدعى

ex.:- This girl is called Rodayna.
- What is your teacher called?

call (ed) (v) يتصل / ينادى

- Salma is calling her father now.

3 **on + يوم (جمع) = every + يوم (مفرد)**

• تعتبر من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع البسيط.

ex.:- SB We play chess on Saturdays / every Saturday.
- He plays football on Fridays / every Friday.

4 **play**

* **play** يلعب

• لاحظ استخدام (play) مع الألعاب التى بها كرة أو مع بعض الهوايات

ex.:- We play games with children.

* **play** يعزف

• تستخدم play مع الآلات الموسيقية مسبوقة بـ the بمعنى يعزف.

ex.:- I play the drums in a band.

5 **(be) aged = (be) .... years old = (be) years in age** ذو عمر / سن

ex.:- Basem is aged 12.
- Basem is 12 years old.
- Basem is 12 years in age.

6 **The same** نفس (الشئ)

ex.:- They wear the same colour.
- They are the same age.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in pairs	فى ثنائيات	write about	يكتب عن
look at	ينظر إلى	talk about	يتحدث عن
belong to	ينتمى إلى / يخص	a picture of	صورة لـ
work hard	يعمل بجد	on TV	على شاشة التليفزيون
clap for	يصفق من أجل	on the radio	فى الإذاعة / الراديو
arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)	help in the children's hospital	
arrive in	يصل إلى (مكان كبير)	يساعد فى مستشفى للأطفال	

That's true !	هذا صحيح !	proud of	فخور بـ
It's great !	هذا عظيم !	for no money = for free	بلا مقابل مادى
tell .... about	يخبر .... عن	of course	بالطبع

Exercise on Vocabulary

◎ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. They have the same age and parents, they are ....
   a. twins b. relatives c. double d. couple
2. You do .... when you want to find information on the internet.
   a. diary b. research c. quiz d. hobby
3. This afternoon, I'll have a/an .... for a new job in an oil company.
   a. shower b. research c. interview d. meeting
4. Doing something with no money is a .... work.
   a. bad b. voluntary c. noisy d. silly
5. A .... is a group of people who play music together.
   a. parent b. band c. class d. chorus

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. My .... is my father's or mother's sister. *(Rafah - North Sinai 2020)*
   a. uncle b. aunt c. daughter d. son
7. WB Maher .... voluntary work at a hospital. *(امتحان مجمع القاهرة - روض الفرج ٢٠٢١)*
   a. plays b. makes c. does d. watches
8. WB .... are musical instruments which you hit with your hands or sticks.
   a. Drums b. Guitars c. Flutes d. Harps
9. " .... " are your parents. *(Tanta - Gharbia 2020)*
   a. Son and daughter b. Mum and dad
   c. Cousin and uncle d. Brother and sister

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. "Female" is the opposite of "...........".
    a. meal b. mail c. mall d. male
11. Ali and Tamer wear the .... colour.
    a. as b. same c. similar d. every

12. The manager .... the most important problems during the meeting.
a. played b. discussed c. called d. won

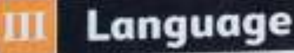
Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. My father and mother are .... "60" and "53".
a. old b. aged c. age d. ago

14. This big house .... to me. I bought it last year.
a. has b. belongs c. finds d. owns

15. .... Omar and Ahmed are my cousins.
a. Two b. Each c. All d. Both

16. Our English teacher is .... Ayman.
a. sold b. told c. called d. made



III Language

1. Pronouns الضمائر



1 Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل (تحل محل الفاعل)
تستخدم قبـل الفعـل

2 Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول
تستخدم بعـد الفعـل

3 Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية
تستخدم قبـل الاسـم المملـوك

4 Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية
تشير إلى الملكية ولا يأتى بعدها اسم

Subject pronouns		Object pronouns	Possessive adjectives		Possessive pronouns
I	أنا	me	my	+ noun اسم	mine
You	أنت / أنتم / أنتن	you	your		yours
He	هو (للعاقل)	him	his		his
She	هى (للعاقل)	her	her		hers
It	هو / هى (لغير العاقل)	it	its		–
We	نحن	us	our		ours
They	هم	them	their		theirs

2. Using possessive adjectives and pronouns
استخدام صفات الملكية وضمائر الملكية

We use possessive adjectives to show something belongs to somebody :

تستخدم صفات الملكية لتبين أن شيء ما يخص شخص ما :

- Marwan is my uncle.
- Nader and Mona are their parents.

• لاحظ أن : صفات الملكية تتبعها اسم (الاسم المملوك).

لاحظ أن :

ضمير الملكية = إسم + صفة الملكية

- This is my pen. = This pen is mine.
- It's her bag. = It's hers.

• لاحظ أن : ضمائر الملكية لا يأتى بعدها اسم وتحل محل صفة الملكية والاسم المملوك معًا.

Important Notes on Pronouns

ملاحظات هامة على الضمائر

• عند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام Whose كالآتى :

Whose + (noun) إسم .... ?

ex.: - Whose bag is it ?
- It's my bag. = It's mine.

• هناك تعبيرات تستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية :

- This is my car.
= This car is mine.
= This car belongs to me.
= I have a car.
= I own this car.

• ضمائر الفاعل (تأتى فى بداية الجملة) تحل محل الفاعل وتسبق الفعل (الأساسى أو المساعد).

ex.: - I play tennis every week.
- He eats lunch at 3 : 00 p.m.
- They are my parents.

• ضمائر المفعول تحل محل المفعول وتتبع الفعل أو تتبع حروف الجر

ex.: - Please, tell me about your family.
- Huda is our grandmother. We love her so much.
- Can you come with me to the theatre ?

Multiple choice notes

ملاحظات لسؤال الاختيار من متعدد

* Toka is (me - my - mine - I) daughter. (She - Her - Hers - Herself) is in grade three.

• فى المثال السابق تم اختيار (my) لأنها يتبعها اسم وتم اختيار (She) لأنها فاعل للجملة الثانية (تسبق الفعل المساعد is)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB Our parents are proud of .... because we work hard at school.
   a. we b. our c. ours d. us
2. WB Clap for football players. .... have played very well. (امتحان مجمع دمياط - الزرقا، ٢٠٢١)
   a. Them b. They c. Their d. Theirs
3. SB My sister's name is Ola. .... 's 7. *(Sedfa - Assiut. 2020)*
   a. Her b. She c. Hers d. Him
4. He told .... that she was wrong. *(Al Amria - Alex. 2020)*
   a. her b. his c. your d. hers
5. This room belongs to my daughters. It's .... *(South Giza 2020)*
   a. they b. their c. them d. theirs
6. WB Throw the ball to .... , please. I am waiting. *(Ain Shams - Cairo 2020)*
   a. me b. my c. I d. mine

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. .... played well and scored many goals.
   a. Me b. Mine c. I d. My
8. Give this mobile to ....
   a. she b. him c. our d. their
9. .... mobile is this ? - It's Rokaya's.
   a. Who b. Whose c. When d. Where
10. This is .... computer. He bought it last week.
    a. mine b. my c. his d. hers

11. Tarek and I visit .... grandfather every Friday.
   a. they   b. our   c. its   d. her

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB,WB & Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. This is not our school. It's <u>your.</u> *(Auseem - Giza 2020)* (............)
2. WB Can <u>your</u> give me your pen, please ? (............)
3. It's not my camera. <u>My</u> is new. *(El Fashn - Beni Suef 2020)* (............)
4. SB Today is <u>hers</u> birthday. (............)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. There are three girls and these are <u>them</u> books. (............)
6. This book belongs <u>for</u> him. (............)
7. They're her bags. They're <u>his.</u> (............)
8. Ali bought a new camera for <u>her</u> daughter. (............)
9. <u>Who</u> car is this ? - It's mine. (............)
10. All the players in our team like <u>his</u> captain. (............)

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 1 SB page 3 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٣ ثم قم بالتدرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   - **Ali's family.**

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. Who's Omar ?
   - ....
3. What is Ali's cousin called ?
   - ....

مهارة الكتابة

2. Writing Corner

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. We are brothers and we are both aged 12.
2. I play football, but my brother plays chess.
3. I don't like music, but he likes it.
4. We do voluntary work.
5. We play games with children and read them stories.

١. نحن إخوة كلانا عمره ١٢ عام.
٢. ألعب كرة القدم لكن أخي يلعب الشطرنج.
٣. لا أحب الموسيقى لكن هو يحبها.
٤. نقوم بعمل تطوعي.
٥. نلعب الألعاب مع الأطفال ونقرأ لهم قصص.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

belongs - His - mine - Theirs - Their

1. This is my father. .... name is Waleed.
2. I have two sons. .... names are Ali and Hany.
3. You can't take this jacket. It's ....
4. This house .... to us. Dad bought it last week.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your family"

....

....

مهارة التحدث

3. Speaking Corner

Talking about your family

التحدث عن عائلتك

1. My dad's name is اسم الأب . He is عمره .
2. My mother's name is اسم الأم . She is عمرها .
3. My brother's name is اسم الأخ . He is عمره .
4. My sister's name is اسم الأخت . She is عمرها .
5. My (mother / father) is a / an وظيفة .

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. What's your favourite sport ?
   a. Basketball b. Tennis c. Football d. Hockey
2. When do you play basketball ?
   a. On Fridays b. On Mondays c. Every day d. On Sundays
3. Who do you play it with ?
   a. My father b. My mother c. My sister d. My friends
4. Is basketball an interesting sport ?
   a. No, it isn't. b. Yes, it is. c. I don't know. d. No, it hasn't.

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Omar is asking Ali about his grandfather.

Omar : Can I ask you some questions ?
Ali : Yes, (1) .... course.
Omar : What's the name of your grandfather ?
Ali : He is (2) .... Yasser.
Omar : How (3) .... is he ?
Ali : He is 50 (4) ....
Omar : (5) .... is his hobby ?
Ali : He is interested in playing chess.
Omar : Do you like chess ?
Ali : Of course. I like it.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Toka and Mona look like each other. They are ....
   a. sons b. twins c. brothers d. uncles
2. Salma plays the guitar in a ....
   a. hand b. pond c. band d. match

3. My sister is my mother's and father's ....
   a. grandmother b. daughter c. aunt d. mother
4. I don't know this word. I'll look it up in a ....
   a. dictionary b. basket c. vase d. van
5. We played a .... match and we scored many goals.
   a. tennis b. swimming c. diving d. football
6. Mai helps in a children's hospital for free. She likes .... work.
   (Hehia - Sharkia 2020)
   a. voluntary b. school c. easy d. writing
7. The children of your grandchildren are your ....
   a. sons b. great-grandchildren
   c. parents d. great-grandfathers
8. Little Salma is playing with .... mother.
   a. his b. its c. her d. their
9. We are having dinner with .... friends.
   a. our b. his c. her d. their
10. That's Omar's book. It's ....
   a. him b. he c. his d. her

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The girls are going to the park with **her** friends. (..........)
2. This watch belongs to **mine**. (..........)
3. My wife is **call** Sama. (..........)
4. **What** pencil is this ? - It's Ali's. (..........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your family"

....
....
....
....
....
....

LESSONS **3 & 4**

SB pages 6 - 8 WB pages 74 & 75



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

add (ed) (v)	يضيف	conversation (n)	محادثة
orphan (n)	يتيم	country (n)	دولة
mountain (n)	جبل	attic (n) (غرفة علوية للتخزين)	سندرة / سُقيفة
city (n)	مدينة (كبيرة)	adventure (n)	مغامرة

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3 SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 74

correct (ed) (v), (adj)	يصحح - صحيح	How long ...?	كم المدة ... ؟
minutes (n)	دقائق	airport (n)	مطار
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	live (d) (v)	يعيش

Lesson 4 SB page 8 WB page 75



end (n)	نهاية	one day (adv)	ذات يوم

Countries and Cities دول ومدن

Morocco	دولة المغرب	South Africa	دولة جنوب أفريقيا
England	إنجلترا	Oman	دولة عمان
Cape Town (مدينة فى جنوب أفريقيا)	كيب تاون	Switzerland	سويسرا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
fly	يطير / يسافر جوًا	flew	flown
feel	يشعر	felt	felt

hear	يسمع	heard	heard
catch	يمسك / يلحق بـ	caught	caught
learn	يتعلم	learned/learnt	learned/learnt

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite	العكس
high	مرتفع	low	منخفض
top	قمة	bottom	قاع
important	مهم	unimportant	غير مهم
arrive	يصل	leave	يغادر
city	المدينة	the country / countryside	الريف

You can see ...

in a city		in the mountains	
airport	مطار	goats	ماعز
hospital	مستشفى	sheep	أغنام / خراف
park	منتزه	birds	طيور
shops	محلات	flowers	زهور

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

adventure	an exciting activity	مغامرة
goat	a mountain animal you can eat or get milk from	ماعز
orphan	a child with no mother or father	يتيم
city	a place with lots of houses, shops and people	مدينة
attic	the top room in a house	سندرة / سقيفة (غرفة علوية فى سطح المنزل)
mountain	a high area of land, higher than the land around it	جبل

II Listening and Reading



on Lesson 3 SB page 7

Sami : My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris, France. He goes to the airport[1] on Sundays and he catches a plane[2] to Paris.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مطار | (2) يلحق بطائرة

It takes[3] five hours to fly there. And then he catches a plane home to Egypt on Thursday evening. He works very hard.

On Saturdays we play football in the park and we play chess. I love my dad and I'm happy when he's at home.

Aya : My grandmother and grandfather live in South Africa. They live next to the beach[4] in Cape Town. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them, but it's a long way[5]. It takes twelve hours to fly there !

I talk to them on the phone but they don't have a computer so we can't make a video call[6]. I would like to see them every day but I can't.

Check Vocabulary

يستغرق (3)	شاطئ (4)	طريق طويل (5)	يجرى مكالمة فيديو (6)



• on Lesson 3 WB page 74

I am Hassan. My family *lives* in Alexandria, but my dad ***doesn't work*** in Egypt. He works in London. He **goes** to the airport on Sunday evenings and he ***catches*** a plane to England. He comes home on Thursday evenings. On Saturday, I ***don't go*** to school, and my father doesn't work. We ***play*** chess or we ***go*** to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My brother ***is*** three and he ***doesn't*** swim. He watches us !

Videoscript Lesson 3 SB page 6

Narrator : Senet[1] is a very old Egyptian game. You can see it in this picture. It is about 3.000 years old.

Narrator : Look at these people at the Pharaonic Village museum[2] in Cairo. They like senet, too.

Narrator : Today, people play a game like senet. It's called chess.

Narrator : Two people play chess[3]. Each person has got white or black pieces. It is not an easy game. Some people play it for six hours or more !

Check Vocabulary

لعبة فرعونية قديمة (1)	متحف القرية الفرعونية (2)	لعبة الشطرنج (3)

Narrator : Bassem Amin is an Egyptian chess player[4]. He is from Tanta and he is very famous[5]. He is very good at chess.

Narrator : Chess is a popular[6] game in Egypt. There are many chess clubs[7] and some children have chess lessons after school. They also play it at home with their parents.

Narrator : Do you play chess ?

Check Vocabulary

(4) لاعب شطرنج	(5) مشهور	(6) شعبي/محبوب	(7) اندية للشطرنج



on Lesson 4 SB page 8

Heidi (By Johanna Spyri)



Heidi is the story of an orphan[1] girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland[2]. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains[3] and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic[4] of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.



Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend[5], Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy !



But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats.

Heidi has lots of adventures[6] in the city.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يتيم	(2) سويسرا	(3) جبال	(4) غرفة علوية للتخزين	(5) صديق	(6) مغامرات

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 with
يستخدم حرف الجر ليدل على الملكية بمعنى «ذو»

ex.:- SB A child with no mother or father is an orphan.
- I can see a man with long hair.

2 sheep
خروف / أغنام (تعامل معاملة الإسم المفرد والجمع)

ex.:- I bought a sheep from the market yesterday. (مفرد)
- Sheep have wool on them. (جمع)

3 country - the country - city - town - village

* country — دولة

ex.:- Egypt is a big country in Africa.

* the country = the countryside — الريف

ex.:- Living in the country is comfortable مريح.

* city — مدينة كبيرة

ex.:- Alexandria is a beautiful city.

* town — مدينة صغيرة

ex.:- Shoubra El Kheima is a busy town.

* village — قرية

ex.:- I like going to my village in Sham El Neseem.

4 in order - order

* in order — بالترتيب

ex.:- Put these pictures in the correct order.

* order — طلب / أمر / يطلب

ex.:- We should follow our teacher's orders.
- I'll order a cup of tea for you.

5 like

* like — يحب

ex.:- What do you like to have ?

* like — يشبه (تستخدم للوصف)

ex.:- What do you think living in the mountains is really like ?

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

away from	بعيدًا عن	lots of = a lot of	كثير من
think of + (n. / inf. + ing)	يفكر فى	live in live with	يعيش فى (مكان) يعيش مع (شخص)
take (شخص) to (مكان)	يأخذ (شخص) إلى (مكان)	take + (time) to + inf.	يستغرق وقت لكى ...
in the correct order	فى الترتيب الصحيح	It takes three hours to reach Alexandria.	
at the end of	فى نهاية	feel + (صفة)	يشعر بـ
in the summer	فى فصل الصيف	- She feels happy.	
communicate with	يتواصل مع	come home	يصل للمنزل
(be) right to + inf.	يكون محقًا فى ...	compare .... with	يقارن... بـ
at the top of ...	فى قمة	make a video call	يجرى مكالمة فيديو

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. A person who doesn't have a father or mother is called a / an ....
 a. member b. orphan c. cousin d. friend

2. A/An .... is the top room in a house.
 a. city b. office c. attic d. shop

3. Salma likes .... stories as they are exciting and dangerous.
 a. funny b. comic c. adventure d. children

4. When you .... five and seven, you get twelve.
 a. take b. add c. give d. think

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. WB A / An .... is very high. (امتحان مجمع القاهرة - عابدين ٢٠٢١)
 a. list b. menu c. mountain d. adventure

6. Farmers get .... from goats. (Nasser - Beni Suef 2020)
 a. bread b. meat c. rice d. eggs

7. SB A .... is an animal that is like sheep. (Esna - Luxor 2021)
 a. lion b. goat c. dog d. tiger

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. What happened at the .... of the film ?
   a. country b. right c. timetable d. end
9. English people live in ....
   a. France b. Egypt c. Morocco d. England
10. Egypt is a big .... in Africa.
   a. city b. country c. village d. mountain
11. We always have a/an .... with our teacher about studying English.
   a. conversation b. fight c. interview d. match

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. It .... twelve hours to fly to Cape Town.
   a. makes b. takes c. gives d. talks
13. What is your feeling when you are away .... your parents ?
   a. from b. to c. on d. at
14. I .... happy when I see my friend, Ahmed.
   a. fall b. fill c. feel d. fail
15. Salma is .... a video call now.
   a. making b. doing c. delivering d. eating
16. Now, you can communicate .... your friends easily using smartphones.
   a. in b. on c. with d. about

III Language

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط



لاحظ أن :

١. يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

ex. - Marwa usually plays tennis on Fridays.

٢. يضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (ss , ch , sh , o , x) :

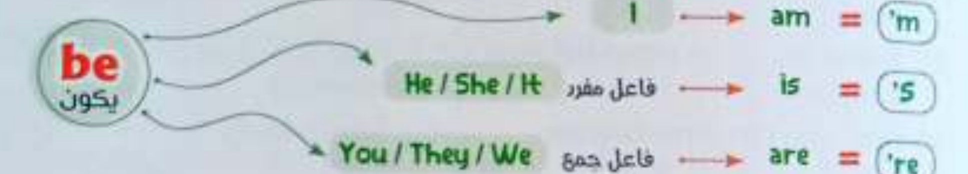
ex. - My brother often watches TV after lunch.

٣. يضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y) :

ex. Amal always studies hard for her exams.

لاحظ أن :

١. يتم استخدام (verb to be) فى زمن المضارع البسيط كالآتى :



٢. يتم استخدام (verb to have) فى زمن المضارع البسيط كالآتى :

have
يمتلك

He / She / It فاعل مفرد → has = 's

I / You / They / We فاعل جمع → have = 've

Key words كلمات دالة

always دائمًا	usually عادة	often غالبًا
sometimes أحيانًا	never أبدًا	

- لاحظ أن ظروف التكرار السابقة تسبق الفعل الأساسى فى الجملة.

- She usually gets up early.

- لاحظ أيضًا أن ظروف التكرار السابقة تتبع (V.to be).

- She is usually late for school.

- أما ظرف التكرار (مدة + every) إما أن يأتى أول الجملة أو فى نهايتها.

- Every day, I go to school.
- I go to school every day.

◂ عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار (عدد مرات حدوث الفعل) نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام (How often) بمعنى كم مرة ... ؟

- How often do/does + فاعل + inf. ..... ?
- How often do you play football ?

وللإجابة نستخدم أحد ظروف التكرار

- always / usually / often / sometimes / never
- I usually play football.

أو ذكر عدد مرات الفعل

- I play football once / twice a week.



2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I / we / you / They (اسم جمع) + don't + inf. (المصدر)

ex. I don't get up at six o'clock on Friday.

He / She / It (اسم مفرد) + doesn't + inf. (المصدر)

لاحظ أن :

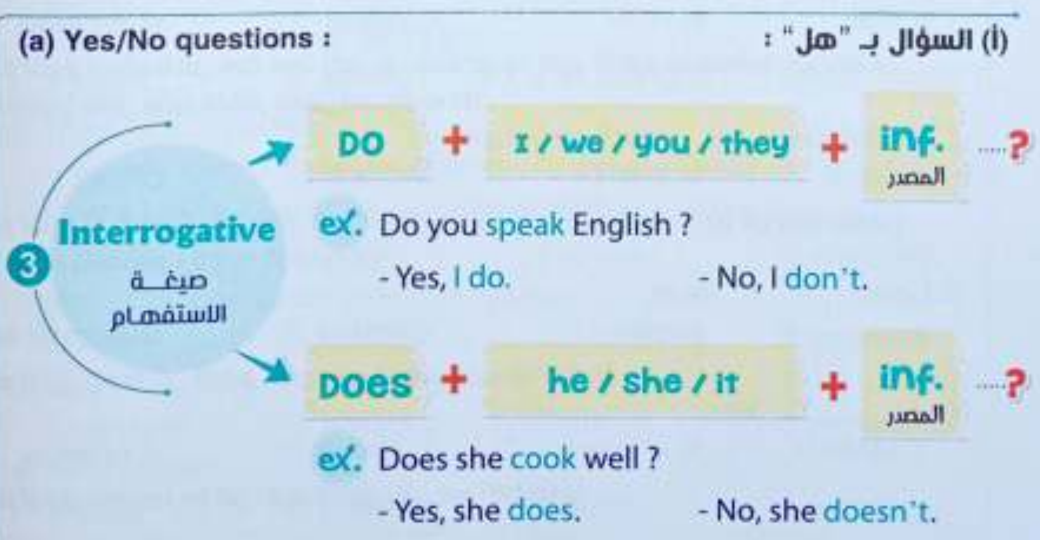
◂ حرف (s) يحذف من الفعل عند النفى.

ex. He doesn't play football every Thursday.

◂ (never) تستخدم فى النفى مع عدم حذف (s) مع المفرد الغائب.

ex. The bus never stops near my house.

(a) Yes/No questions : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :



3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

DO + I / we / you / they + inf. (المصدر) .....?

ex. Do you speak English ?

- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

Does + he / she / it + inf. (المصدر) .....?

ex. Does she cook well ?

- Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

لاحظ أن حذف حرف (s) من الفعل عند السؤال بـ (Does):

(b) Wh-question : (ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

كلمة الاستفهام + do / does + I / we / you / they / he / she / it + inf. (المصدر) ...... ?

ex. - What do you study ?
- Where does she go ?

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن :

١. الحقائق الثابتة (facts) خاصة الحقائق العلمية والقوانين والحقائق المرتبطة بالكون والطبيعة :

ex.: The sun always rises in the east.

٢. عادات وأحداث متكررة (habits & repeated actions) :

ex.: - Maha gets up early every day.
- She usually goes to school on foot.
- He often plays football on Fridays.

Multiple choice notes

ملاحظات لسؤال الاختيار من متعدد

1. Salma always .... a bike on Friday.
a. ride b. rides c. riding d. is riding

تم اختيار (rides) لأن هذا حدث يعبر عن عادة لوجود ظرف التكرار (always) بالإضافة أن Salma فاعل مفرد فنختار الفعل المضاف له (s).

2. My father .... work on Saturday.
a. don't b. aren't c. doesn't d. isn't

تم اختيار (doesn't) لأن فاعل الجملة مفرد (My father) فيكون النفى فى زمن المضارع البسيط باستخدام (doesn't + inf.).

3. Lions .... meat.
a. eat b. eats c. eating d. doesn't eat

تم اختيار (eat) لأن الفاعل جمع والجملة تعبر عن حقيقة ثابتة.

4. He .... late.
a. never is b. is never c. always is d. often is

تم اختيار (is never) لأن ظرف التكرار يأتى بعد (V.to be).

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. Nabila .... like cooking. *(South Giza 2020)*
   a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. wasn't
2. SB How does Sami .... when his dad is at home ?
   a. feel b. feels c. felt d. feeling
3. He .... shopping every week. *(El Fashn - Beni Suef 2020)*
   a. go b. goes c. going d. gone
4. SB I don't .... to music. *(امتحان مجمع الجيزة - البدرشين ٢٠٢١)*
   a. listens b. listen c. listening d. listened
5. WB Hany loves basketball. He .... it every day. *(امتحان مجمع الشرقية - منوف ٢٠٢١)*
   a. plays b. play c. played d. playing

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. She always .... to her work early.
   a. go b. went c. going d. goes
7. The bus .... stops near my house.
   a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. never
8. Where does your friend .... ?
   a. live b. lives c. lived d. living
9. The sun .... us heat and light.
   a. gives b. giving c. is giving d. give
10. They .... to school early.
    a. usually comes b. usually come c. comes usually d. come usually
11. Over a billion people .... Chinese as their first language.
    a. speak b. spoke c. speaks d. speaking
12. She .... her hands three times a day.
    a. wash b. washes c. is washing d. washing
13. I don't .... early on holidays.
    a. gets up b. got up c. get up d. getting up
14. An engineer .... new schools.
    a. build b. is built c. builds d. building

15. We all .... our country.
a. loving b. be loved c. love d. loves
16. Which sport .... Youssef like to do ?
a. do b. have c. has d. does

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. She **don't** like fish. *(Zefta - Gharbia 2020)* (........)
2. Salma **plays always** basketball. *(Rafah - North Sinai 2020)* (........)
3. SB I **plays** the drums in a band. (........)
4. WB Maher always **do** voluntary work at hospital. (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. He usually **play** football. (........)
6. Do you like reading ? - Yes, I **am**. (........)
7. They **writes** English well. (........)
8. Where **do** your father work ? (........)

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 8 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٣٨ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

- ....

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. In which country does Heidi live ?

- ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context** تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص

3. The word "**orphan**" in the text means ....
a. **has no father or mother** b. has a father and mother
c. has no friends d. has no money

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. Heidi is an orphan girl. ١. هايدى فتاة يتيمة.
2. She went to live with her grandfather. ٢. ذهبت لتعيش مع جدها.
3. Her grandfather is a farmer. ٣. يعمل جدها فلاحًا.
4. She sleeps in a bed in the attic. ٤. تنام هايدى فى سرير في سقيفة (غرفة علوية).
5. She is very happy. ٥. هى سعيدة جدًا.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

don't - Do - lives - walk - never - doesn't

1. Hala .... in Cairo.
2. I .... have a computer.
3. He .... goes to school on Friday.
4. .... you work in Egypt ?
5. How often does she .... to school ?

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite story"

....

....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها

Questions 	Answers 
• Do you listen to music ? هل تستمع إلى الموسيقى ؟	- Yes, I do.
• Does she play chess ? هل هى تلعب شطرنج ؟	- No, she doesn't.

General Exercises  LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Habiba is asking Nada about her family.

Habiba : Where do you live, Habiba ?
Nada : I live in Cairo (1) .... my family.
Habiba : Have you got a brother or sister ?
Nada : Yes, I (2) .... got a brother.
Habiba : (3) .... is his name ?
Nada : He is called Ali.
Habiba : (4) .... is your hobby, Nada ?
Nada : I like to (5) .... swimming.
Habiba : Goodbye, Nada.
Nada : See you, Habiba.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Samar is an **orphan** girl. She went to live with her uncle Adnan who was a shepherd راعي غنم in the Western Desert. He lived in a small house and he had a lot of goats and camels. Samar slept in a bed made from animal's skin and drank goat's milk. She ate bread and cheese. She made friends with a female camel which she called Felfela. She loved her and **they** went on long walks in the desert. Samar had a lot of adventures in the desert. She loved the life of desert and mountains.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

2. What does Adnan have ?

....

3. What do you think of life in the desert ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a. Samar b. Adnan c. Felfela d. a & c
5. The word "**orphan**" means ....
   a. has no father or mother b. has no friends
   c. has no brothers d. has no sisters
6. Felfela is a .... camel.
   a. male b. female c. bad d. baby

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. You can get wool from ....
   a. giraffes b. elephants c. sheep d. tigers
2. Sleeping in a/an .... is sometimes comfortable.
   a. pool b. attic c. street d. circus
3. SB He goes to the .... to catch his plane to Paris on Sunday.
   a. port b. station c. pavement d. airport
4. Living in the desert has a lot of ....
   a. houses b. adventures c. rooms d. sheep
5. Nada doesn't .... lunch.
   a. makes b. made c. making d. make
6. Heidi is an .... girl. She has no father or mother.
   a. orphan b. unkind c. old d. ugly
7. He .... clever and helpful.
   a. is always b. always is c. never is d. sometimes is
8. SB Heidi is very sad to be .... from her grandfather.
   a. way b. away c. why d. weight
9. On Sundays, we .... swimming.
   a. go b. do c. listen d. play
10. Which hobby .... Ali like doing ?
    a. do b. to do c. does d. done

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. He **don't** want to stay here. (............)
2. He **live** in a small house in the mountains. (............)
3. On Fridays, we don't **goes** to school. (............)
4. Water **boiling** when we heat it. (............)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Voluntary work"

....

....

....

....

....

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 9 & 10 WB pages 76 & 77



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	partner (n)	شريك / زميل
gymnast (n)	لاعب جمباز	studies (n)	دراسات
gymnastics (n)	رياضة الجمباز	balance (d) (v), (n)	يتزن / توازن
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحي	train (ed) (v)	يتدرب / يتمرن
Olympics (n)	ألعاب أوليمبية	busy life	حياة مليئة بالعمل
mathematics (n)	مادة الرياضيات	physics (n)	مادة الفيزياء
achieve (d) (v)	ينجز / يحقق (أهداف)	athletics (n)	ألعاب قوى

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 76

topic (n)	موضوع	present (ed) (v)	يعرض / يقدم
idea (n)	فكرة	answer (ed) (v), (n)	يجيب - إجابة
related (adj)	مرتبط / متصل	writing tip (n)	نصيحة للكتابة
best (adj)	أفضل	family tree (n)	شجرة العائلة

Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 77

stay (ed) (v), (n)	يقيم / يمكث - إقامة	dream (ed) (v), (n)	يحلم - حلم
description (n)	وصف	club (n)	نادي

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
lose يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost

Words and Opposites
كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
busy	مشغول	free	غير مشغول / حُر
healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل

Study these definitions
ادرس هذه التعريفات

gymnastics	a sport which has a lot of different skills, such as jumping	رياضة الجمباز
gymnast	a person who does gymnastics	لاعب جمباز
busy	spending a lot of time doing things	مشغول
train	practise a sport	يتدرب

II Reading and Listening





on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Habiba Marzouk achieves[1] her dreams[2]

Habiba Marzouk is a gymnast[3]. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with her family.

Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she trains[4] for five or six hours. She is a top gymnast in Africa[5] and she wants to go to the Olympics[6].

Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy[7] food so that she can stay strong. Gymnastics[8] is a difficult sport but it makes her happy.



Check Vocabulary

(1) يحقق / ينجز	(2) أحلام	(3) لاعبة جمباز	(4) يتدرب	(5) أفريقيا	(6) الألعاب الأوليمبية	(7) صحى	(8) رياضة الجمباز

on Lesson 6 WB page 77

My name is Omar. Nabila is my sister. She lives with me and my family in Damietta. Her favourite food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming ! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday. My sister plays chess, too. I do not like chess. How old is Nabila ? She is 12. That is the same as me. I am 12, too.

on Lesson 7 SB page 11

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I ***live*** in Aswan with my family. My parents ***are*** teachers. My brother Ali ***is*** 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Khaled goes swimming every Friday.

I ***listen*** to music with ***my*** brothers. Ali ***plays*** football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Khaled ***goes*** swimming every Friday. There is a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is called Aya. We ***play*** basketball at school, and we're both in the school team. ***Our*** team is very good !

on Lesson 7 WB page 78

Munir and Mustafa are twins. ***Their*** sister is called Radwa. ***Her*** hobby is tennis and she is my best friend. I live with ***my*** brother and ***his*** name is Sayed. ***Our*** house is in Cairo. What is ***your*** best friend's name ?

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 busy
مزدحم - مشغول

ex.: - The classroom is busy. There are 70 students.
- The telephone line is busy.
- Habiba has a very busy life.

---

2 so that
لكى

جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط + ... so that + فاعل + can + inf. المصدر

ex.: - SB She eats healthy food so that she can stay strong.

3 gymnast - gymnastics

* **gymnast** لاعب جمباز
  ex.:- My friend is a famous gymnast.
* **gymnastics** رياضة الجمباز (يأتى بعدها الفعل فى صيغة المفرد)
  ex.:- Gymnastics is a great sport.

4 make مفعول + inf. مصدر الفعل — يجبر / يجعل

ex.:The teacher made Amal do her homework.

make مفعول + (adj) صفة

ex.:Playing football makes me happy.

5 لاحظ أن هذه الكلمات تنتهى بحرف(s) إلا أنها تتبع بفعل مفرد

physics / athletics / mathematics / gymnastics

ex.:- Gymnastics makes me fit.

6 list - menu

* **list** قائمة (أشياء مثل مشتريات)
  – Mum gave me a list of things to buy from the supermarket.
* **menu** قائمة (طعام فى مطعم مثلًا)
  – The waiter gave me the menu to choose from.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

find it difficult about	يجد صعوبة بشأن	a description of	وصف لـ
move to	ينتقل إلى	stay strong	يظل قويًا
answer to	يجيب عن / إجابة لـ	in the evenings	فى أوقات المساء
study hard	يذاكر بجد	in Africa	فى قارة أفريقيا
train for + (مدة)	يتدرب لمدة	top gymnast	أفضل لاعب جمباز

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Athletes work hard to .... their school studies, their friends and families.
   a. repeat b. leave c. balance d. stay

2. The Egyptian football team .... hard to get a medal in the next Olympics.
   a. rain   b. train   c. make   d. stop

3. Mohammed Rashwan is a top athlete who won a silver medal in the .... in Los Angelos.
   a. festival   b. Olympics   c. party   d. physics

4. .... is a difficult sport, but it makes me fit.
   a. Physics   b. Mathematics   c. Gymnastics   d. Olympics

5. Sara is a .... She practises a lot to win a medal in her sport.
   a. teacher   b. doctor   c. gymnast   d. nurse

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. Good students work hard to .... their dreams. *(Rafah - North Sinai 2020)*
   a. stay   b. achieve   c. start   d. finish

7. SB Our science teacher made some .... to make the lesson easier. *(Samalout - Minia 2020)*
   a. diagrams   b. grams   c. tea   d. food

8. WB Nabila and Omar like .... They always go to the sea. (امتحان مجمع الإسكندرية - المنتزه ٢٠٢١)
   a. printing   b. swimming   c. staying   d. reading

9. WB A busy person is always .... *(Belbis - Sharkia 2020)*
   a. talking   b. walking
   c. doing something   d. going

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. How long will you .... in Egypt ?
    - For 3 weeks.
    a. carry   b. stay   c. know   d. make

11. "..................." is the opposite of "strong".
    a. Weak   b. Angry   c. Funny   d. Sunny

12. The policeman asked me to give a .... of the thief I saw.
    a. question   b. dream   c. description   d. balance

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Mathematics .... a school subject.
    a. are   b. is   c. have   d. were

14. Habiba Marzouk is a .... gymnast in Africa.
   a. tape   b. top   c. pot   d. bat
15. Gymnastics helps you to .... strong.
   a. spend   b. find   c. stay   d. sleep
16. The coach .... the players train very hard to get ready for the league الدورى.
   a. caused   b. made   c. drove   d. rode

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٥١ ثم قم بالتدرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى
  1. Why do you think Habiba has a busy life ?
     I think because she goes to school, studies hard and trains for five or six hours a day.
- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات
  2. Why does Habiba like gymnastics ?
     - ....
- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير
  3. What does the word "her" in the text refer to ?
     - ....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. Habiba Marzouk is a top gymnast. ١. حبيبة مرزوق لاعبة جمباز على مستوى عالٍ.
2. She is 18 and lives in Cairo. ٢. تبلغ من العمر ١٨ عام وتعيش فى مدينة القاهرة.
3. She trains for about 6 hours a day. ٣. تتدرب لمدة حوالى ٦ ساعات فى اليوم.
4. She eats healthy food to stay strong. ٤. تتناول أطعمة صحية لتظل قوية.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

me - for - can - is - on - in

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

1. Gymnastics .... a difficult sport.
2. Sports make .... feel happy.
3. Athletes eat healthy food so that they .... be strong.
4. I go swimming .... Fridays.
5. Habiba trains .... five or six hours a day.

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"A famous sportswoman"

....

....

Writing tips

A paragraph is a group of related sentences that present one topic or one idea.

الموضوع الإنشائى هو عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل المترابطة التى تعرض/تقدم موضوع واحد أو فكرة واحدة.

Punctuation marks :

علامات الترقيم :

1. Start each sentence with a capital letter.

١. ابدأ كل جملة بحرف كبير.

2. Use capital letters for : names, cities, days of the week, etc.

٢. استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع : اسماء الأشخاص ، المدن، أيام الأسبوع ، الخ.

3. End your sentence with a (.), (!) or (?).

٣. ضع :

أ. النقطة (.) فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

ب. علامة التعجب (!) فى نهاية الجملة التى تعبر عن الدهشة أو المفاجأة.

ج. علامة الاستفهام (؟) فى نهاية الجملة الاستفهامية.

3. Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about a friend or a person

توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن صديق أو شخص

Questions	Answers
• What is his / her name ? ما اسمه أو اسمها ؟	- He / She is ... اسم الشخص.
• How old is he / she ? ما عمره أو عمرها ؟	- He / She is ... السن أو العمر. عمره / عمرها .... .
• Where does he / she live ? أين يعيش أو تعيش ؟	- He / She lives in ... اسم المكان. هو / هى تعيش فى ... .
• Who is his / her best friend ? من هو أفضل صديق له أو لها ؟	- His / Her best friend is ... أفضل صديق له / صديقة لها ...
• What is his / her favourite food ? ما هو الطعام المفضل له أو لها ؟	- His / Her favourite food is .... طعامه / طعامها المفضل ......
• What are his/ her hobbies ? ما هى هواياته أو هواياتها ؟	- His / Her hobbies are ... (الهوايات). هواياته أو هواياتها .....

Skills corner

★ تدرب على المهارات طبقاً للورقة الامتحانية كل درس على حده :

١- **مهارة القراءة** : تدرب على اسئلة قطعة الفهم (أستخراج معلومات – اعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية – فهم ما يشيراليه الضمير – تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص – مهارة التفكير النقدي).

٢- **مهارة الكتابة** : تدرب على كيفية الكتابة مع مراعاة (التنظيم – التهجى – ترابط الافكار – علامات الترقيم – القواعد اللغوية – اختيار المفردات اللغوية).

٣- **مهارة التحدث** : تدرب على اتقان الوظائف اللغوية للتعامل مع سؤال المحادثة فى الامتحان.

المعاصر فى اللغة الانجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

General Exercises  LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Gymnastics is a/ an .... sport.
   a. easy b. difficult c. interesting d. boring
2. The gymnast .... for many hours daily.
   a. waves b. tells c. keeps d. trains
3. A gymnast must .... his hobby, work and study.
   a. train b. balance c. make d. charge
4. The gymnast always wants to .... his dream.
   a. achieve b. study c. take d. goes

2 WB Complete the following dialogue :

Toka is telling Leen about her cousin, Fares.

Toka : This is a photo of my cousin.

Leen : What's his (1) .... ?

Toka : It's Fares.

Leen : (2) .... old is he ?

Toka : He's 14 .

Leen : Where does he live ?

Toka : He lives (3) .... Giza.

Leen : Which foods does he love ?

Toka : He (4) .... fish with rice.

Leen : Me, (5) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I find it difficult to .... to the city.
   a. move b. write c. train d. achieve
2. SB Habiba eats well because .... is a difficult sport.
   a. physics b. gymnastics c. mathematics d. Olympics

3. Let's go to the club to .... for the match.
   a. sleep   b. eat   c. train   d. drink
4. SB Habiba is a top .... in Africa.
   a. gym   b. gymnastics   c. gymnast   d. gymnastic
5. My .... is to be a doctor.
   a. dream   b. hobby   c. party   d. match
6. She goes to school and she .... hard.
   a. studies   b. study   c. is studying   d. studying
7. Athletics .... is a group of physical sports.
   a. are   b. is   c. be   d. being
8. WB Habiba is a great athlete. .... family lives in Cairo.
   a. Her   b. She   c. Hers   d. She's
9. How often do you .... sports ?
   a. make   b. do   c. plan   d. dive
10. "Busy" means .... a lot of time doing things.
   a. doing   b. making   c. reading   d. spending

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Seleem **don't** play tennis after school. (............)
2. Mathematics **are** an interesting subject. (............)
3. She is 18 and **live** in Cairo with her family. (............)
4. What'**s** their names ? (............)

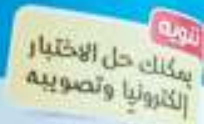
5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The best person in your family"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Test on unit 1



• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Habiba Marzouk lives in ....
   a. Aswan b. Cairo c. Tanta d. Luxor
2. Habiba Marzouk wants to go to ....
   a. China b. France c. the Olympics d. Italy
3. Habiba Marzouk is a top ....
   a. gymnast b. basketball player
   c. tennis player d. referee
4. Habiba Marzouk has a .... life. *(Hehia - Sharkia 2020)*
   a. busy b. free c. sad d. angry

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue : *(Sharkia 2020)*

Salma is asking Nada about her father.

Salma : What's your father's job ?

Nada : He is a (1).......................... .

Salma : A pilot ! (2) .... he like his job ?

Nada : Yes, he (3) .... it very much.

Salma : Where does he work ?

Nada : He works at Cairo (4) ....

Salma : How do you (5) .... your time ?

Nada : We sometimes play chess.

Salma : Wonderful !

Nada : Thanks.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

There are many young athletes in Egypt, who broke records الأرقام القياسية. In swimming, Farida Osman is known as "Egypt's Golden Fish" holds the record and title لقب of the 50 - metre butterfly. **She** has already competed نافس in two Olympics. Nour El Sherbini is the youngest woman to win

the Women's World Championship بطولة in squash. Alaa eldin Aboul Kassem was the first Olympic fencing رياضة المبارزة medal winner from an African country. He also competed at the 2016 Rio Olympics.

Sara Ahmed became the first woman from an Arab country to win an Olympic medal in weightlifting رفع الأثقال in the 2016 Rio Summer Olympics. Habiba Marzouk is a top **gymnast** in Africa.

All those athletes have a very busy life. They train very hard and study as well. They work hard to balance their studies or works, their sport and their friends and family.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the best title for the passage ?

....

2. Why do you think athletes have a busy life ?

....

3. How many athletes are mentioned in this passage ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "***gymnast***" means a person who ....
   a. plays football b. plays tennis
   c. plays basketball d. does gymnastics
5. The underlined pronoun "***She***" refers to ....
   a. Sara Ahmed b. Farida Osman
   c. Habiba Marzouk d. Nour El Sherbini
6. Nour El Sherbini is a .... player.
   a. weightlifting b. squash c. basketball d. tennis

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. They bought a new mobile for .... father.
   a. her b. their c. his d. its
2. I learn words by drawing simple ....
   a. drums b. dresses c. diagrams d. programmes

3. Sara always .... nice stories in the library.
a. reads b. read c. reading d. has read

4. All sportsmen dream of going to the ....
a. hospital b. Olympics c. school d. factory

5. Does she watch TV ? - No, she ....
a. don't b. does c. doesn't d. do

6. Hala has a very .... life. She goes to school and studies hard all time.
a. ugly b. free c. busy d. dirty

7. Playing chess is one of my favourite ....
a. subjects b. colours c. hobbies d. ideas

8. Doing this kind of sport .... me happy.
a. takes b. plays c. gives d. makes

9. Mohammed Salah became a .... footballer in England.
a. base b. middle c. bottom d. top

10. Her father and mother are alive, so she isn't an ....
a. orphan b. archeologist c. engineer d. Italian

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB Habiba eats healthy food so that she can **stays** strong. (...........)
2. WB Seleem doesn't **plays** tennis after school. (...........)
3. She loves **his** parents very much. (...........)
4. **Does** you have a new bag ? (...........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A famous gymnast"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

UNIT **2**

It's my favourite subject

SB pages 12-21 WB pages 79-85

Objectives

- **Reading :**
  Descriptions of schools around the world
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph about your journey to school;
  A paragraph about your daily life
- **Listening :**
  A discussion about timetables
- **Speaking :**
  Asking and answering about school and timetables
- **Language :**
  Adverbs of frequency; possessive 's and s'
- **Life Skills :**
  Critical thinking; self-management



• كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة اليومية والابحاث فى نهاية الكتاب.
• ملحق (Master your term).



• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.

LESSONS **1 & 2**

SB pages 12 : 15 WB pages 79 & 80



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

lesson (n)	حصة / درس	study (ied) (v) , (n)	يدرس / دراسة
computer studies (n)	مادة الحاسب الآلى	drama (n)	مادة الفن المسرحى
bell (n)	جرس	playground (n)	ملعب
library (n)	مكتبة (للقراءة والاستعارة)	art (n)	مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	typical (adj)	نمطى / نموذجى
social studies (n)	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية	school hall (n)	قاعة / فناء المدرسة

تنويه

- **Key Vocabulary** هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق **Master**).
- **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 12 &13 WB page 79

travelling (n)	السفر / التنقل	quarter to	إلا ربع (للإخبار عن الوقت)
difference (n)	فرق / اختلاف	half (n)	نصف
quarter past	وربع (للإخبار عن الوقت)	break (n)	فسحة / راحة
language (n)	لغة	subject (n)	مادة دراسية

Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 80

school days (n)	أيام الدراسة	trip (n)	رحلة قصيرة
road (n)	طريق	finally (adv)	أخيرًا / فى النهاية
head teacher (n)	ناظر المدرسة	Nairobi (n)	مدينة نيروبى
daily life (n)	الحياة اليومية	Kenya (n)	دولة كينيا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up
mean	يعنى / يقصد	meant	meant
ring	يرن / يتصل تليفونيًا	rang	rung

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
usual	مألوف / معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
start	يبدأ	finish	ينهى

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

School subjects مواد دراسية		
Arabic	the main language of Arab people	مادة اللغة العربية
art	painting and drawing	مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)
computer studies	the subject for learning how to use a computer	مادة الحاسب الآلى
drama	the subject of how to learn about acting	مادة الفن المسرحى
English	the language of England, the USA and many other countries	مادة اللغة الإنجليزية
home economics	the subject for learning about cooking and skills for the home	مادة الاقتصاد المنزلى
religion	the subject for learning about what people believe in	مادة التربية الدينية
science	the subject for learning about how to test and understand facts. It includes biology, chemistry and physics	مادة العلوم
social studies	the subject for studying people and how they live	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية
Other definitions تعريفات أخرى		
break	the time at school when you do not have lessons	راحة / فسحة
library	a place where you can borrow or read books	مكتبة
playground	a place outside where children at school can play	ملعب

bell	an object that makes a noise when you ring it	جرس
hall	a large room where people can meet together	قاعة / صالة
typical	means usual	نمطى

II Listening and Reading



• on Lesson 1 SB page 13

Amal : I like the new timetable[1]. What's your favourite day, Injy ?

Injy : I like Thursday. We have social studies[2] first on Thursday. Then we have English and then we go to science[3]. That's my favourite subject.

Amal : My favourite day's today. We have maths[4] first and second lesson after break today. I love maths! Then we have science and art[5].

Injy : I like art too, but I'm not very good at it. What do we have tomorrow ?

Amal : English, then religion[6] is next, then Arabic and then home economics[7]. After break[8], we have social studies. Then we have science and computer studies[9]. Finally, we have music.

Injy : When do we have drama[10]?

Amal : That's the last two lessons on a Tuesday and the last lesson Wednesday. It's time for the next lesson now ! See you later !

Check Vocabulary

(1) جدول مواعيد	(2) دراسات اجتماعية	(3) مادة العلوم	(4) مادة الرياضيات	(5) مادة التربية الفنية
(6) مادة التربية الدينية	(7) مادة الاقتصاد المنزلى	(8) فسحة / راحة	(9) مادة الحاسب الآلى	(10) مادة الفن المسرحى

• on Lesson 1 SB page 13



Say the times. Listen and check.

1. A quarter past ten.
2. Half past twelve.
3. Half past five.
4. Twenty-five past seven.
5. Five to twelve.
6. A quarter to nine.



Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 14

Daily life around the world



"I'm Akeyo. I live in Nairobi, in Kenya. This is a typical[1] day for me. On school days I get up at half past[2] six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away[3], so we never walk there. My mum and dad drive us there. It always takes a long time because the roads are busy. When we hear the bell at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall. We have four lessons, then it is break. I usually talk with my friends in the playground[4], but sometimes we go to the library[5] to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have lunch at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I get home, I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I have a busy day![6]"

Check Vocabulary

(1) نمطى	(2) ونصف	(3) بعيدة	(4) ملعب	(5) مكتبة	(6) يوم مزدحم بالعمل

Videoscript Lesson 2 SB page 14

Narrator : In Africa, America, Asia, and Europe, most children between the ages[1] of four and eighteen go to school.

They often study subjects such as maths, Arabic and English.

Students study in the morning and sometimes in the afternoon, too.

Some children go to school from Sunday to Thursday.

Other children go to school from Monday to Friday.

Check Vocabulary

(1) أعمار

When they finish school, some students choose to go to university. Some of the most important universities in Africa and the Arab region[2] are in Egypt.
There is the Al-Azhar University[3]. This is one of the oldest universities in the world.
And there is Cairo University in Giza.
Here, people study subjects like art, science and computer studies.
Do you want to go to university ?
Which subjects do you want to study at university ?

Check Vocabulary

(2) منطقة | (3) جامعة الأزهر

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 Verb to have

المعانى المختلفة للفعل "have"

- يستخدم بمعنى لدى / عندى إذا كان بعده مادة دراسية.

ex.: - Today, I have two maths lessons.

- يستخدم بمعنى يمتلك إذا كان بعده اسم مملوك.

ex.: - Omar has a new car.

- يستخدم بمعنى يتناول إذا جاء بعدها طعام / شراب.

ex.: - I like to have lunch at home.

2 Collocations with verb "do"

أسماء متلازمة مع الفعل "do"

- do homework — يؤدى الواجب المنزلى
- do computer studies — يدرس الحاسب الآلى
- do the housework — يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية

3 by / on / in + means of transport

وسائل المواصلات بعد حروف الجر

يستخدم حرف الجر "by" قبل كل وسائل المواصلات بشرط عدم وجود أداة أو أى كلمة أخرى قبلها مثل "a – an – the – my" وإن وجدت كلمة أخرى يتغير حرف الجر إلى "on - in"

- لاحظ أنه يستخدم حرف الجر "in" قبل وسائل المواصلات الخاصة مثل "car - taxi - canoe".

ex.: - Toka goes to school by car / in a car.
- He goes to school by taxi / in a taxi.

- لاحظ أنه يستخدم حرف الجر "on" دائمًا قبل كلمة "foot" لتعنى سيرًا على الأقدام وتأتى قبل وسائل المواصلات العامة مثل "bus - plane - train".

ex.: - He goes to school on foot = He walks to school.
- I go to work by bus / on a bus.

4 drive (someone) to a (place). يوصل (شخص) لمكان بالسيارة

ex.:- Dad drives me to school.

5 home / there

• لاحظ هاتان الكلمتان (home / there) لا تسبقان بحرف جر كما بالأمثلة.

ex.:- I get home at 7 p.m.

- She went there last week.

6 on / in / at + time حروف الجر قبل الوقت

* on يستخدم حرف الجر "on" قبل الأيام وتاريخ اليوم
  - on Friday / Tuesday / Wednesday / Saturday
  - on 15th August 2019

* in يستخدم حرف الجر "in" مع الشهور والسنوات
  - in (October / November / January)
  - in (2018 / 1998 / 2003)

* at يستخدم حرف الجر "at" قبل الساعة
  - at seven o'clock.
  - at quarter past ten
  - at half past eleven / eleven thirty

7 a girl's school / a girls' school

* a girl's school مدرسة تذهب إليها بنت
* a girls' school مدرسة للبنات فقط

8 • لاحظ أن المواد الدراسية المنتهية بحرف "s" مثل

physics / mathematics / computer studies / home economics / social studies

تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد ويستخدم معها فعل مفرد ولا يستخدم فعل جمع.

ex.:- Computer studies is my favourite subject.

- Maths has a lot of numbers.

9 The verb "get" with different meanings

لاحظ المعانى المختلفة للفعل "get"

ex.:- I get home at 3 : 15 p.m. يصل إلى المنزل

- I get up at six o'clock in the morning. يستيقظ

10 ring — يستخدم هذا الفعل بمعنى يرن / يتصل

ex.: - The school bell rings at 8 : 00 a.m. — يرن جرس المدرسة

- Rokaya can't ring me because she doesn't have my telephone number. — يجرى مكالمة تليفونية

11 a.m. / p.m. — للتعبير عن فترات الليل والنهار (صباحاً / مساءاً)

ex.: - I go to school at 7 : 00 a.m. — صباحًا

- I go to bed at 10 : 00 p.m. — بعد فترة الظهيرة أو فترة المساء

12 far away / far from

* far away — بعيد

ex.: - My house is far away.

* far from — بعيد عن ...

ex.: - My house is far from school.

13 a long .... / ...... along

* a long + اسم مفرد — (صفة) بمعنى طويل

ex.: - Engineers build a long road.

* ... along — (ظرف) بمعنى بامتداد

و يسبق بأفعال مثل : (walk - swim - run ...)

ex.: - I like walking along the river.

Important expressions & prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

good at + (n. / inf. + ing)	جيد فى	have a busy day	لديه يوم مزدحم بالعمل
on school days	فى أيام الدراسة	take a long time	يستغرق وقتًا طويلاً
talk to / with	يتحدث إلى / مع ...	at break	فى الفسحة
school starts at	تبدأ الدراسة فى ...	help in the home	يساعد فى المنزل
school finishes at	تنتهى الدراسة فى ...	tell the time	يخبر بالوقت
typical day for me	يوم نمطى/نموذجى بالنسبة لى	on a typical weekend	فى عطلة نهاية أسبوع نموذجية

It is time for (noun / inf. + ing)...	حان الوقت لـ...	get home	يصل للمنزل
What day is it today ?	ما اليوم ؟	around the world	حول العالم

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. We know it is time for the next lesson when we hear the school .... ringing.
   a. ball b. bin c. bell d. mail
2. You can know everything about countries, seas and rivers in ....
   a. maths b. art c. social studies d. English
3. All the children in our school go to the school .... when the head teacher wants to talk to us.
   a. hall b. hole c. whole d. hell
4. Some pupils study .... to make some shows.
   a. social studies b. computer studies
   c. science d. drama
5. At break, I play games with my friends in the ....
   a. bathroom b. playground c. laboratory d. classroom

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. SB .... is the subject of how to learn numbers. *(El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)*
   a. Drama b. Maths c. Arabic d. English
7. WB Dina .... swimming on Thursday and Saturday.
   a. makes b. does c. goes d. feels
8. WB On a .... weekend, I visit my grandmother.
   a. physical b. musical c. typical d. national
   (امتحان مجمع القليوبية – بنها ٢٠٢١)
9. Can I look at the .... to know the time of the English lesson ?
   a. laboratory b. timetable c. toilet d. bell
   (Mahalla-Gharbia 2020)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. I go to school at quarter .... seven.
 a. too b. to c. two d. toe

11. How many lessons do students .... every day at school ?
 a. make b. give c. send d. have

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. Ahmed was born .... 18th June 1985.
 a. to b. in c. on d. at

13. When I .... home, I have my lunch.
 a. take b. give c. have d. get

14. Sara is good .... social studies.
 a. at b. in c. for d. to

15. Mona was late. She had to go to school .... a taxi.
 a. by b. on c. at d. in

16. My uncle .... me to school yesterday.
 a. made b. gave c. drove d. went



Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار



- تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار فعل ما :

ex. - I always get up early.

- ظروف التكرار تأتى قبل الفعل الأساسى وبعد (verb to be) :

ex. - We usually go out on Fridays. - We are never late for school.

How often + (do / does) + subj. (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ? كم مرة ...؟

- تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد المرات التى يتكرر فيها فعل ما وللإجابة نستخدم ظروف التكرار :

always - sometimes - usually - often - never

ex. - How often do you walk to school ?
* I never walk to school.

- How often does he do his homework in the evening ?
* He always does his homework in the evening.

- يمكن الإجابة على السؤال بعدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

- How often do you go to the club ?
* I go to the club twice a week.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB We .... speak English during our English lessons.
a. not b. yet c. always d. ever

2. WB We .... go to the beach in winter. It's too cold to swim.
(امتحان مجمع الفيوم - طامية ٢٠٢١)
a. never b. always c. usually d. sometimes

3. SB How .... do you get up at 6.30 a.m ? - Always.
(امتحان مجمع البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢١)
a. many b. long c. much d. often

4. We .... go to school on Fridays. (South Giza 2020)
a. always b. often c. never d. usually

5. Which lesson .... after home economics on Sunday ? (Mashtoul-Sharkia 2020)
a. will b. has c. does d. is

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. I have breakfast at seven o'clock every morning. This means I .... have breakfast at 7 in the morning.
a. always b. sometimes c. often d. never

7. My father .... to work by car.
   a. usually goes   b. goes usually   c. go never   d. never go
8. Mrs Mervat .... goes to work early. She never comes late.
   a. never   b. ever   c. always   d. sometimes
9. Ashraf does not like flying. This means he .... travels by plane.
   a. always   b. never   c. sometimes   d. often
10. Salma gets ten out of ten. She .... studies her lessons very well.
   a. never   b. sometimes   c. always   d. ever

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. Dina **always** goes swimming. She goes swimming on Thursday and Saturday. *(Benha - Qalyoubia 2020)* (.........)
2. SB We both get up **in** half past six. (.........)
3. My father **travels always** by plane. *(Wasat Alexandria 2020)* (.........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. I usually **helps** in the home. (.........)
5. Sara and Mona **always are** happy. (.........)
6. He **eats never** unhealthy food. (.........)
7. **When** do you eat vegetables ? - Twice a day. (.........)

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٧٢ ثم قم بالتدرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   - Daily life around the world.

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. What do Akeyo and her friends do at break ?

- ……………………………………………………

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context** تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

3. The word "**typical**" in the text means ………… .

a. unusual b. safe c. usual d. unknown

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. I usually get up at 6 : 30 a.m and have breakfast with my family.
١. استيقظ عادة في تمام السادسة والنصف صباحًا وأتناول وجبة الإفطار مع أسرتي.
2. I go to school by car as it's far away. ٢. أذهب إلى المدرسة بالسيارة لأنها بعيدة.
3. I have lunch at four o'clock. ٣. أتناول وجبة الغداء في تمام الرابعة.
4. I never watch TV in the evening. ٤. لا أشاهد التليفزيون أبدًا في المساء.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

lives – usually – live – I – drives –me

1. I ………… in Nasr City, in Cairo.
2. This is a typical day for ………… .
3. On school days, ………… get up at 6 : 30 a.m.
4. I ………… have breakfast with my family.
5. My dad ………… me to school every day.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :**

"Your daily life"

……………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Telling the time

الإخبار بالوقت

There are two ways of telling the time : هناك طريقتان للإخبار عن الوقت :



9 :15 : a quarter past nine → nine fifteen




10 : 45 : a quarter to eleven → ten forty-five




11:05 : five past eleven → eleven five




11:30 : half past eleven → eleven thirty




12:50 : ten to one → twelve fifty




Note : 15 minutes = a quarter of an hour | 30 minutes = a half of an hour

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضع اختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع اختبار الوحدة وكل الاختبارات الخاصة بالمنهج.



General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Heidi and Nada are talking about school timetable.

Heidi : What's your favourite subject ?

Nada : I (1) .... maths. And you ?

Heidi : Social studies.

Nada : Do we (2) .... an English lesson tomorrow ?

Heidi : Yes. It's after science. What (3) .... does it start ?

Nada : (4) .... 10 o'clock.

Heidi : What's your favourite day ?

Nada : My favourite day (5) .... today, we have maths and P.E.

Heidi : I love P.E. lessons.

Nada : Wonderful !

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Othmano lives in Rowanda. This is a typical day for him. On school days, Othmano gets up at half past six. He usually has breakfast with his family. His school is far away, so **he** takes the school bus at five to seven. He arrives at school at quarter past seven. The school bell rings at eight o'clock and the pupils go to the school hall. Othmano has four lessons before the break. At break he talks to his friends and plays in the playground. He has more lessons after **break**. He has lunch at 12:30. The school day finishes at 3:00. He arrives home at 3:30.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

2. Why does Othmano take the bus to school ?

....

3. Do you think Othmano's typical day is good or bad ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**break**" has the same meaning as ....
   a. work b. rest c. fun d. lunch
5. The school .... rings at 8 o'clock.
   a. pin b. bell c. bill d. bin

6. The underlined pronoun "**he**" refers to ....
a. Othmano b. Adel c. Othmano's friend d. Samy

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Do you often .... your friends ?
a. visits b. visit c. to visit d. visiting
2. SB Arabic is the main .... of Arab countries.
a. subject b. sport c. language d. hobby
3. A plane .... fast.
a. always is b. is always c. never is d. is never
4. .... is the time when you don't have lessons.
a. Brake b. Book c. Break d. Bike
5. .... do you get up early on holiday ? - Never.
a. What time b. When c. How often d. How old
6. Yesterday was a/an .... day for me. It was the same as every day.
a. ugly b. typical c. free d. type
7. We learn about acting in ....
a. drama b. science c. maths d. Arabic
8. SB What .... does school start ? - At 8 a.m.
a. school b. time c. class d. lesson
9. The subject for learning about cooking and skills for the home is called ....
a. home economics b. science
c. drama d. computer studies
10. The .... rings at the end of each lesson at school.
a. bill b. bell c. ball d. pill

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Faten sometimes <u>read</u> English books. (...........)
2. How <u>many</u> do you watch TV ? - Sometimes. (...........)
3. He <u>does usually</u> exercises on Friday. (...........)
4. They play in the club every day. They <u>never</u> go to the club. (...........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite subject"

....
....
....
....
....

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 16 : 18 WB pages 81 & 82



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

school uniform (n)	زى مدرسى	culture (n)	ثقافة
school rules (n)	القواعد المدرسية	way (n)	طريقة / وسيلة
school objects (n)	أدوات مدرسية	rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر / مطر
cycle (d) (v)	يقود (دراجة)	snowmobile (n)	دراجة جليدية
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع	canoe (d) (v) , (n)	يجدف / قارب طويل ضيق

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 81

football shirt (n)	قميص كرة القدم	teachers' room (n)	حجرة المدرسين
pencil case (n)	مقلمة	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
office (n)	مكتب	towel (n)	منشفة / فوطة

Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 82

forms (n)	أشكال / أنماط	village (n)	قرية
transport (n)	النقل والمواصلات	journey (n)	رحلة طويلة
travel (led) (v)	يسافر	Lake Bunyonyi	بحيرة بونيونى
again (adv)	مرة ثانية	Uganda (n)	دولة أوغندا

forms of transport

أنماط / أشكال المواصلات

animal	حيوان	in a city	فى المدينة	on water	على الماء	in the air	فى الجو
camel	جمل	car / taxi	سيارة / تاكسى	boat	قارب	plane	طائرة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
kind	طيب / عطوف	unkind	قاسى / غير طيب
outside	خارج	inside	داخل
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

canoe	a small, narrow boat for one or two people	قارب طويل ضيق
cycle	ride a bicycle	يركب دراجة
snowmobile	a vehicle that you can drive on snow	دراجة جليدية
Uganda	a country in central Africa	دولة أوغندا

II Listening and Reading





on Lesson 3 WB page 81

Fatma : Hi Mariam. Is this Malak's pen ?

Mariam : No, that's Judy's pen. She always uses that pen.

Fatma : OK. Whose bag is this ?

Mariam : That's Huda's bag.

Fatma : No, it's not Huda's bag. Her bag is red. This bag is blue.

Mariam : Oh, OK. Then it's Malak's bag.

Fatma : There's a book on the desk. Is that your book ?

Mariam : No, it's the teachers' book. All the teachers use that book.

Fatma : Ah, I know whose ruler this is. It has Dalia and Azza's names on it.

on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Narrator 2 : 1

Narrator : Every morning, children from this village[1] in Egypt cycle[2] to school. It is a cheap[3] and healthy[4] way[5] to travel.

Boy : When the roads are busy, the bus is slow but the bike is quick[6] !

Narrator 2 : 2

Narrator : These children live next to Lake[7] Bunyonyi in Uganda[8]. Their school is on the other side[9] of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe[10]. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

Boy : Sometimes, when it rains[11] a lot, the water's dangerous and we can't go to school that day.

Narrator 2 : 3

Narrator : This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow[12]. The children travel to school on a snowmobile[13] !

Boy : It's cold, but it's fast - and fun !

Check Vocabulary

(1) قرية	(2) يركب دراجة	(3) رخيص	(4) صحي	(5) طريقة	(6) سريع	(7) بحيرة
(8) دولة أوغندا	(9) الجانب الآخر	(10) قارب طويل ضيق	(11) تمطر	(12) جليد	(13) مركبة للتنقل فوق الجليد	



on Lesson 4 SB page 18

How do they go to school ?



- In some countries, children live a long way from their school. They do not go to school by car, bus or train.

1. Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time.
2. These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

3. This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile !



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (y) قبله حرف ساكن، يتم حذف حرف (y) ويضاف (ies) فى نهاية الاسم عند الجمع.

* a hobby → hobbies
* a country → countries

* أما إذا كان الاسم منتهى بحرف (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a / e / i / o / u) لا يتم حذف (y) ويضاف (s) فى نهاية الاسم عند الجمع.

* a boy → boys
* a toy → toys

2 on time / in time

* **on time** — فى الوقت المحدد

ex.: - Good students arrive at school on time.

* **in time** — فى الوقت المناسب (قبل الوقت المحدد قليلاً)

ex.: - Ali saved the young boy in time.

3 افعال تعبر عن طريقة السفر أو وسيلة المواصلات

* He cycles to school. (by bicycle / bike)
* Bassem always drives to work. (by car)
* We often walk to school. (on foot)
* Rahma usually flies to Hurghada. (by plane)
* Tourists sailed to Alexandria. (by boat)

4 by canoe = in a canoe — بالقارب (الضيق الطويل)

ex.: - The children go to school in a canoe (by canoe).

5 take + وقت + to + inf. المصدر — يستغرق

ex.: - How long does it take to go to Benha ?
- It takes 30 minutes to go to Benha.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the right	على جهة اليمين	on the timetable	فى جدول المواعيد
on the other side of	على الجانب الآخر من	work in groups	يعمل فى مجموعات
take a difficult journey to	يقوم برحلة صعبة لـ	help each other	يساعد كلًا من الآخر
		take (شخص) to (مكان)	يأخذ شخص لمكان
take the same time	يستغرق نفس الوقت	travel on a snowmobile	يسافر / ينتقل فى دراجة جليدية
say unkind things	يقول أشياء غير طيبة		
follow school rules	يتبع القواعد المدرسية	walk along	يمشى بطول / باستقامة
live a long way from	يعيش بعيدًا عن	important to	هام لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. A .... is used to move and travel on ice.
   a. mobile b. kite c. plane d. snowmobile
2. The school .... should be followed in different schools.
   a. roles b. rulers c. rules d. rows
3. Pens, notebooks and books are school ....
   a. uniforms b. rules c. objects d. subjects
4. Some children in Egypt .... to school.
   a. recycle b. cycle c. swim d. circle

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. SB Sometimes, when it .... a lot, the water is dangerous and we can't arrive at school on time.
   a. trains b. reads c. rains d. runs
6. My school .... is a white shirt and blue pants. *(West Cairo 2020)*
   a. rule b. uniform c. form d. picture
7. SB We never .... unkind things to other students. (امتحان مجمع القاهرة - الوايلى ٢٠٢١)
   a. tell b. say c. speak d. see
8. WB Some children in Uganda go to school in a .... (امتحان مجمع سوهاج - جرجا ٢٠٢١)
   a. canoe b. plane c. rocket d. mobile

9. .... Nasser in Aswan is full of many kinds of fish. *(Aswan 2020)*
   a. River b. Lake c. Sea d. Mountain

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. Buses, cars, trains and motorbikes are forms of ....
    a. clothes b. transport c. subjects d. energy
11. Put all your pens in your pencil ....
    a. sharpener b. desk c. board d. case
12. You can know a lot about different .... of countries using the internet.
    a. cultures b. babies c. toilets d. rooms

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. How long does it .... to finish your work ?
    a. give b. have c. take d. talk
14. By cycling to school, students can always arrive .... time.
    a. into b. on c. from d. about
15. In some cities, children live a long .... from their schools.
    a. way b. weight c. height d. length
16. Teachers should help children to work .... groups.
    a. in b. from c. at d. about

III Language

Possessive ('s) الملكية ('s)

تستخدم ('s) الملكية فى الحالات الآتية :

1. تستخدم عادة مع الأسماء المفردة من الكائنات الحية (الأشخاص - الحيوانات ......).

ex.
- a boy's name اسم ولد
- a spider's web شبكة عنكبوت
- a dog's tail ذيل كلب
- a king's palace قصر ملك
- Sara's book كتاب سارة
- a doctor's appointment موعد الدكتور

2. تستخدم ('s) مع الأسماء الجمع غير المنتظمة (غير المنتهية بـ s-).

ex.
- men's coats معاطف الرجال
- children's clothes ملابس أطفال
- women's bags حقائب السيدات

٣ تستخدم ('s) مع الوظائف للإشارة لمكان العمل.

ex. - the butcher's محل الجزار - the chemist's الصيدلية
- the baker's المخبز - the grocer's محل البقالة

٤ تستخدم (s') مع الأسماء الجمع المنتظمة المنتهية بـ (s-) من الكائنات الحية (الأشخاص - الحيوانات .....) ولكن بوضع الفاصلة العليا (') فقط بعد (s).

ex. - The boys' house منزل الأولاد - horses' legs أرجل الخيول

٥ تستخدم ('s) أو (s') مع التعبيرات التى تدل على الوقت.

ex. - a week's holiday اجازة لمدة أسبوع - ten minutes' break استراحة لمدة عشر دقائق
- tomorrow's weather طقس الغد - two days' work يومان عمل

٦ تستخدم ('s) أو (') فقط مع الأسماء المفردة المنتهية بـ (s-)

ex. - Mr Jones's house or Mr Jones' house.

٧ تستخدم ('s) بعد الاسم الأخير فى حالة إمتلاك شخصين أو أكثر لشئ ما.

ex. - WB Can you see Kamal and Amir's classroom ?

٨ لا تستخدم ('s) مع أسماء الجماد.

ex. - exercise book كتاب تدريبات - ink pen قلم حبر
- computer screen شاشة كمبيوتر - table leg رجل المنضدة

٩ يمكن استخدام (belong to) بدلاً من ('s) الملكية للتعبير عن الملكية.

ex. - This is Sama's dress. = This dress belongs to Sama.

Multiple choice notes

ملاحظات لسؤال الاختيار من متعدد

1. Room one is the .... room. They are holding a meeting.
a. teacher b. teachers c. teacher's d. teachers'

تم اختيار (teachers') لأن المقصود غرفة المعلمين جميعًا.

2. Room one is the .... room. His name is Mr Sakr.
a. teacher b. teachers c. teacher's d. teachers'

تم اختيار (teacher's) لأن المقصود غرفة الأستاذ صقر فقط.

3. This is the ....
a. school gate b. school's gate c. schools' gate d. schools gate

تم اختيار (school gate) لأن ('s) لا تستخدم مع أسماء الجماد.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. .... book is it ? - It's Ali's. *(El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)*
   a. Who b. Whose c. Whom d. When
2. SB The .... are Judy and Ola. (امتحان مجمع سوهاج - البلينا ٢٠٢١)
   a. girls names b. girls' names c. girl's names d. girl names
3. SB This is the .... They are talking about English. (امتحان مجمع القرية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢١)
   a. teacher room b. teacher's room
   c. teachers' room d. teachers room
4. This bag is .... *(El Saf-Giza 2020)*
   a. Lama's b. Lama's sister c. Lama d. Lama's sisters
5. WB These are my .... jackets. They go to the same school.
   a. brother b. brothers c. brother's d. brothers'
6. SB They are not the .... notebooks.
   a. children b. childs' c. children's d. childrens'

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. This mobile belongs to ....
   a. Charles's b. Charles' c. a, b d. Charles
8. The .... tail is black.
   a. cat b. cat's c. cats' d. cats
9. We will meet at six in the ....
   a. car park b. car's park c. cars' park d. car park's
10. Whose bag is this ? - It is ....
    a. Dina b. Dina's c. Dinas' d. Dinas
11. This car belongs .... Omar.
    a. on b. to c. of d. for
12. He bought a new ....
    a. computer's screen b. computers' screen
    c. computer screen d. computers screen

13. This is the .... gate.
a. house b. house's c. houses d. houses'

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB This is Alis phone. It's new. (Kotour-Gharbia 2020) (..........)
2. SB The girl name is Lama. (Samalout-Minia 2020) (..........)
3. SB When shoes are these ? - They are Ali's. (..........)
4. WB My sister goes to a girl's school. (..........)
5. It's Dalia's and Azza ruler. (..........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. This is Halas' website. (..........)
7. We buy medicine at the chemist. (..........)

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 18 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٨٦ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Extracting information** إستخراج المعلومات

1. How many forms of transport are there in this passage ?
- There are three (bike, canoe, snowmobile).

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير الناقد

2. Why do you think the children in Egypt cycle to school ?
- ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

3. The pronoun "**Their**" in the text refers to children from ....
a. Egypt b. Uganda c. England d. the USA

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. Some children live a long way from their schools.
   ١. بعض الأطفال يعيشون بعيدًا عن مدارسهم.
2. Some of them have to cross lakes by using a canoe.
   ٢. بعضهم يضطر لعبور بحيرات باستخدام قارب صغير.
3. Other children can't go to school because of heavy snow.
   ٣. أطفال آخرون لا يستطيعون الذهاب إلى المدرسة بسبب الثلج الغزير.
4. They usually use a snowmobile to get to their schools.
   ٤. وهم عادة ما يستخدموا مركبة التنقل فوق الجليد للوصول لمدارسهم.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

rains – in – on – cycles – is – cycle

1. Every morning, some children .... to school in Egypt.
2. It .... cheap and healthy to cycle to school.
3. In Uganda, they go to school .... a canoe.
4. In the USA, children travel to school .... a snowmobile.
5. When it .... a lot, we can't go to school that day.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدروس قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :**

"A journey to school in some countries"

....

....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering about school

السؤال والإجابة عن المدرسة

Questions 	Answers 
A : How do you travel to school ? كيف تذهب إلى المدرسة ؟	**B :** I travel to school by bus. اذهب إلى المدرسة بالأتوبيس.
A : How long does it take ? كم المدة التى تستغرقها الرحلة ؟	**B :** It takes 15 minutes. تستغرق الرحلة ١٥ دقيقة.

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4



• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. My school is .... from my house.
   a. near b. far c. easy d. long
2. I .... to school every morning.
   a. recycle b. cycle c. drive d. take
3. I .... at my school on time.
   a. drive b. arrive c. walk d. talk
4. It's .... to go to school by bike.
   a. unhealthy b. bad c. good d. healthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That red car in the street is ....
   a. car Tom b. Toms car c. Tom car d. Tom's car
2. Mrs Mona is ....
   a. Saras mother b. mother Sara
   c. Sara's mother d. mother's Sara
3. We always .... to the teacher carefully.
   a. help b. do c. forget d. listen
4. A canoe is one of the forms of ....
   a. journey b. snowmobile c. transport d. rule
5. The man washed the ....
   a. doctor car b. doctor's car c. car doctor d. car's doctor
6. "............" is the opposite of "safe".
   a. Expensive b. Dangerous c. Exciting d. Weak
7. We shouldn't .... our school objects.
   a. remember b. forget c. listen d. talk

8. I hope you have a .... journey.
   a. dangerous   b. difficult   c. hot   d. safe
9. SB You shouldn't say .... things to other students.
   a. kind   b. unkind   c. good   d. happy
10. SB The canoe .... the children to school and home again every day.
   a. takes   b. forgets   c. dives   d. tells

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. These are **Rokaya** socks. (..........)
2. This is the **computer's** table. (..........)
3. This is **Menna hat**. (..........)
4. This bike belongs **of** Ali. (..........)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"School rules"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 19 & 20 WB pages 83 & 84



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

project (n)	مشروع	shower (n)	دش / استحمام
dinner (n)	وجبة العشاء	grade (n)	صف دراسى
hobbies (n)	هوايات	put on (phr.v)	يرتدى

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5 SB page 19 WB page 83

French (n) (adj)	اللغة الفرنسية / فرنسى (الجنسية)	quite (adj)	إلى حد ما

Lesson 6 SB page 20 WB page 84

preparatory	إعدادى / المرحلة الإعدادية	separate (d) (v)	يفصل
message (n)	رسالة	reply (ied) (v), (n)	يرد - رد
items (n)	أشياء / أصناف	flag (n)	علم

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
wake up يستيقظ	woke up	woken up

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
put on	يرتدى	take off	يخلع ملابسه
come	يأتى	leave	يغادر
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود

II Listening and Reading





on Lesson 5 SB page 19





Leila : There's the bell[1] !

Aya : What subject have we got next ?

Leila : Let's look at the timetable[2]. We've got computer studies next, in the hall. Hooray !

Aya : Computer studies ... I'm not very good at computer studies !

Leila : I love it ! It's my favourite ! What's your favourite subject, Aya ?

Aya : I like science and languages.

Leila : Are you good at languages ?

Aya : I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French.

Leila : Who's our English teacher this year ?

Aya : It's Mrs Amal.

Leila : Oh good. She's really friendly[3]. When have we got English ?

Aya : It's after break[4].

Leila : What time is break ?

Aya : It's from quarter past ten to half past ten. Let's meet in the playground[5] and go to the library.

Leila : OK !

Check Vocabulary

(1) جرس	(2) جدول الحصص / المواعيد	(3) ودود	(4) راحة / فسحة	(5) ملعب



on Lesson 5 WB page 83

Hatem : What's your favourite subject, Hazem ?

Hazem : I like English.

Hatem : Who's our English teacher this year ?

Hazem : It's Mrs Eman.
Hatem : She's a good teacher. And when have we got English ?
Hazem : We have it today, after break. Then we have maths.
Hatem : Good, I like maths. Are you good at maths ?
Hazem : I'm quite good at maths. I'm not bad at science, too.
Hatem : Yes, you're good at science. What time is break ?
Hazem : Now. Let's go to the playground.

on Lesson 6 SB page 20

A Day in MY Life !

Amira is from Egypt.

Q : How old are you, and where are you from ?
A : I'm twelve years old, and I'm from Hurghada[1].

Q : What subjects do you like ?
A : This year, I'm in preparatory[2] 1 at school. My favourite[3] subjects are science, computer studies[4] and maths. We have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but we only have computer studies on Wednesday. I like music, too[5], but I'm not very good at it !

Q : What do you usually do after school ?
A : I sometimes read or watch TV. I always do my homework[6] before I have dinner[7]. After dinner, I usually have a shower[8] and read my book in bed. What time do you wake up[9] and go to bed ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) مدينة الغردقة	(2) المرحلة الإعدادية	(3) مفضل	(4) مادة الحاسب الآلي	(5) أيضًا	(6) واجب منزلي	(7) وجبة العشاء	(8) دش	(9) يستيقظ

on Lesson 6 WB page 84

Hi Nagwa



How are you ? You want to know what my parents do at the weekend. My father works with computers. My mother is a teacher.
My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park.

My brother always plays football when we go there! He is very good at football. What about you ? What do you do at the weekend ?
Best wishes
Nesma

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 very - quite
تستخدم هذه الظروف فى تقوية معنى الصفة وتأتى غالبًا قبل الصفات.

* I am good at maths. — جيد فى
* I am quite good at maths. — جيد إلى حد ما
* I am very good at maths. — جيد جدًا
* I am not good at maths. — ليس جيد

2 good for / good at

* **good for** — مفيد لـ / جيد لـ

ex.:- Milk is good for our bones عظام.

* **good at (inf. + ing) / noun** اسم — جيد فى

ex.:- She is good at English / reading English.

3 What about you ?
وماذا عنك ؟

يستخدم هذا التعبير فى المحادثات عند الاستفسار عن شىء يخص المخاطب.

A : What's your favourite subject ?
B : I like science. What about you ?
A : I like science, too.

4 quiet - quite

* **quiet = calm** — صفة بمعنى (هادى)

ex.:- The village is quiet.

* **quite + صفة / ظرف** — إلى حد ما

ex.:- He is quite good at maths.
- He runs quite quickly.

5 too - either

* **too** — تستخدم (too) بمعنى أيضًا وتأتى فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة.

ex.:- I like music, too.

* **either** — تستخدم (either) بمعنى أيضًا وتأتى فى نهاية الجملة المنفية.

ex.:- I don't like music, either.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

through the internet	من خلال الإنترنت	talk on the bus	يتحدث فى الأتوبيس
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	from another country	من دولة أخرى
at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	come home from school	يعود للمنزل من المدرسة
have a shower	يستحم		
Hooray = Hurray	تستخدم للتعبير عن الفرحة والدهشة	end with	ينتهى بـ
		send through	يرسل خلال
best wishes	أطيب التمنيات	work with computer	يتعامل مع الحاسب الآلى

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. I usually have a .... in the morning.
   a. shore b. sure c. share d. shower
2. Breakfast, lunch and .... are meals.
   a. dinner b. language c. petrol d. reading
3. Our English teacher always asks us to do ....
   a. beds b. projects c. showers d. photos

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. WB An email is a simple .... sent through the internet.
   a. project b. card c. message d. calendar
5. SB Taking .... is the favourite hobby for some tourists. They have modern cameras. (امتحان مجمع أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢١)
   a. showers b. photos c. rest d. sandwiches
6. WB We often .... shopping at the weekend. (امتحان مجمع المنيا - مطاى ٢٠٢١)
   a. go b. do c. give d. lead
7. My brother is .... short for a basketball player. (Zefta-Gharbia 2020)
   a. quiet b. quit c. quite d. quote

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. We all like Dr Amir because he is kind and ....
   a. unkind b. friendly c. impatient d. greedy

9. Pupils in my school must .... on their school uniform every day.
   a. take b. put c. make d. talk
10. Look at the .... We have a science lesson at 10:00 a.m.
   a. date b. calendar c. timetable d. article
11. He is 14 years old, so he goes to a .... school.
   a. preparatory b. primary c. kindergarten d. secondary
12. What .... are you in ? - I'm in preparatory one.
   a. age b. grade c. colour d. school

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. He works .... computers. He is a computer engineer.
   a. for b. on c. with d. from
14. I usually finish an email with ....
   a. Hi b. Hello c. Dear d. Best wishes
15. People who come .... China are Chinese.
   a. to b. in c. from d. about
16 . I like music, but I'm not very good .... it.
   a. for b. on c. in d. at

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 WB page 84 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٩٨ ثم قم بالتدرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

1. Why do you think Nesma's father doesn't work at the weekend ?

   I think because it is a holiday.

- **Extracting information** إستخراج المعلومات

2. Where do they usually go when it is not very hot ?

   - ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

3. The pronoun "He" in the text refers to ....

a. Nesma's father
b. Nesma's cousin
c. Nesma's uncle
d. Nesma's brother

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. My favourite subjects are science and maths.

١. المواد المفضلة لدى هى العلوم والرياضيات.

2. Music is my favourite hobby.

٢. الموسيقى هى هوايتى المفضلة.

3. I always do my homework before I have dinner.

٣. دائمًا ما انتهى من واجباتى قبل تناول وجبة العشاء.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

after - quite - lesson - quiet - am - too

1. This year, I .... in preparatory one.
2. We have maths in the first ....
3. I like music .... , but I'm not very good at it.
4. I'm .... good at maths.
5. We have science today .... break.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدروس قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :**

"Your favourite subjects"

....

....

Punctuation

علامات الترقيم

1 full stop (.)

تستخدم فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

ex.: - I'm in grade one at school.

2 question mark (?)

تستخدم فى نهاية السؤال.

ex.: - What subjects do you like ?
- Is it your book ?

3 Comma (,)

تستخدم للفصل بين الأشياء فى قائمة.

ex.: - My favourite subjects are science , computer studies and maths.

4 Apostrophe (')

- تستخدم فى حالة الملكية.

ex.: - Amira's family is from Hurghada.
- Pupils' books are over there.

- تستخدم فى الاختصارات.

ex.: - I'm very good at English.
- He's my teacher.

3. Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about school and timetable.

السؤال عن المدرسة والجدول المدرسى والإجابة عليهم.

Questions	Answers
• What subjects have we got today ? ما المواد الدراسية التى ندرسها اليوم ؟	- We have computer studies and science. سندرس مادة الحاسب الآلى والعلوم
• What is your favourite subject ? ما هى المادة المفضلة بالنسبة لك ؟	- I like science. أحب مادة العلوم.
• Are you good at languages ? هل أنت جيد فى اللغات ؟	- I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French. إلى حد ما أنا جيد فى اللغة الإنجليزية ولست سيئًا فى مادة اللغة الفرنسية.
• Who is our English teacher this year ? من هو مدرسنا لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام ؟	- It is Mrs Amal. إنها الأستاذة أمل.
• When have we got English ? متى ندرس مادة اللغة الإنجليزية ؟	- It is after break. بعد فترة الاستراحة (الفسحة).
• What time is the break ? ما وقت فترة الاستراحة (الفسحة)؟	- It is from quarter past ten to half past ten. إنها من الساعة العاشرة والربع حتى الساعة العاشرة والنصف.

General Exercises



LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. How old is Amira ? - She is ....
   a. 13 b. 14 c. 12 d. 16
2. Where is she from ?
   a. Cairo b. Hurghada c. Luxor d. Giza
3. Amira is in .... one at school.
   a. kindergarten b. primary c. secondary d. preparatory
4. She likes ....
   a. English b. maths
   c. science d. science and maths

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nehal is meeting a new girl called Toka.

Nehal : It's good to see you, Toka.

Toka : Me, too, Nehal.

Nehal : Where are you (1) .... ?

Toka : I'm from Hurghada.

Nehal : Hurghada! It is a beautiful (2) .... What grade are you in ?

Toka : I am in (3) .... one.

Nehal : What do you (4) .... after school ?

Toka : I usually (5) .... a shower and study my lessons.

Nehal : Do you have a hobby ?

Toka : Yes, I like tennis.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB I always .... my homework before I have dinner.
   a. take b. do c. make d. have

2. **A :** Are you .... at maths ? **B :** Yes, I'm not bad at it.
   a. good b. favourite c. bad d. sad
3. We use a mouse in .... lesson.
   a. Arabic b. art
   c. computer studies d. maths
4. My mother often .... shopping at the weekend.
   a. takes b. goes c. does d. has
5. WB We .... go to the beach in winter.
   a. always b. ever c. never d. ago
6. What time do you .... up ? - At 6 : 00 am.
   a. wake b. walk c. wait d. talk
7. We have seven .... on school days.
   a. tables b. breaks c. lessons d. trips
8. WB My father works .... computers.
   a. at b. for c. with d. about
9. SB I usually have a shower and read my book .... bed.
   a. onto b. from c. in d. at
10. Mark is from France. He is ....
    a. English b. French c. Brazilian d. American

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. No, he <u>ever</u> does his homework after breakfast. (............)
2. Where <u>are</u> you come from ? (............)
3. I sometimes <u>watches</u> TV. (............)
4. SB What subjects do they <u>studied</u> ? (............)

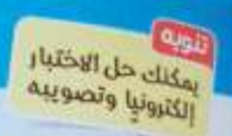
5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A day in your life"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Test on unit 2



• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Akeyo lives in ....
   a. Nairobi b. Cairo c. Paris d. Rome
2. Her .... drive her to school.
   a. brothers b. uncles c. sisters d. parents
3. Akeyo's school is ....
   a. near b. far away c. not remote d. difficult
4. Akeyo goes to the .... to read.
   a. playground b. bookshop c. snowmobile d. library

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Samar and Aya are talking about how they go to school.

Samar : How do you go to school ?

Aya : My dad (1) .... me to school every day. And you ?

Samar : I usually go to school by (2) ....

Aya : (3) .... do you usually go by bus ?

Samar : Because my school is (4) .... away.

Aya : How long does it (5) .... to go to school ?

Samar : It takes 50 minutes.

Aya : Which is better to go to school in the car or on the bus ?

Samar : Of course the car.

Aya : Thanks, Samar.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I'm Nada. I'm from Hurghada **by** the Red Sea. I'm in preparatory one. My favourite subjects are science and home economics. **I** have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but I only have home economics

on Tuesday. I always do my homework before I have dinner. I usually have a light dinner عشاء خفيف : a cheese sandwich or some vegetables. I usually have a shower and surf the internet on my mobile phone. I sleep at 10:00 p.m. But before sleeping, I prepare my uniform and my school bag.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the underlined pronoun "I" refer to ?

....

2. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

3. Why do you think Nada's mobile phone is useful ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Nada goes to bed at ....

a. 10:00 a.m. b. 12 p.m. c. 10:00 p.m. d. 1: 00 a.m.

5. Nada does her homework .... she has dinner.

a. in b. before c. after d. next

6. The underlined word "**by**" has the same meaning as "..........".

a. above b. under c. next to d. far away

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Reading and painting are my favourite ....

a. sports b. languages c. subjects d. hobbies

2. Sama .... happy when she meets her friends.

a. are always b. is always c. always is d. always

3. We use a question mark at the .... of a question.

a. first b. left c. end d. top

4. The .... is Ali.

a. boys' name b. boy's name c. boy's the name d. boys'

5. I .... on my school uniform at 7 a.m.

a. have b. talk c. take d. put

6. This is the ....
   a. school playground
   b. schools' playground
   c. school's playground
   d. school playground's
7. SB We can use a comma to .... items in a list.
   a. separate
   b. come
   c. have
   d. take
8. We go to the .... in science lessons.
   a. garden
   b. laboratory
   c. park
   d. club
9. WB An email is a simple .... sent through the internet.
   a. subject
   b. message
   c. blog
   d. post
10. It's healthy to .... to school.
   a. cycle
   b. use
   c. recycle
   d. rain

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB The **girl's** names are Sara and Toka. (...........)
2. **Who's** pencil is this ? - It's Huda's. (...........)
3. Let's **goes** to the zoo. (...........)
4. WB We **go never** to the beach in winter. (...........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Jobs you do at home"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Quiz on units 1&2

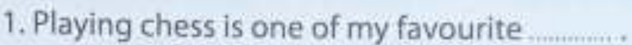
اختبار تراكمى على الوحدات (١ ، ٢)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة فى الوحدات





*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**



1. Playing chess is one of my favourite ....
   a. subjects b. colours c. hobbies d. ideas
2. .... tablet is this ? - It's mine.
   a. Who b. Whose c. How d. Which
3. We .... go to school on Fridays.
   a. always b. usually c. ever d. never
4. A child who doesn't have a father or mother is called a/an ....
   a. member b. cousin c. orphan d. adult
5. We always .... our problems with our parents.
   a. go b. discuss c. drive d. cut

Model B

Marks

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He visited .... friend yesterday.
   a. him b. hers c. mine d. his
2. The athletes .... hard to be in the next Olympics.
   a. use b. train c. find d. make
3. I look at the .... to know the time of the English lesson.
   a. library b. bell c. timetable d. laboratory
4. The sun .... us heat and light.
   a. gives b. giving c. given d. gave
5. She .... voluntary work at a children's hospital.
   a. plays b. makes c. does d. watches

UNIT 3

Different People

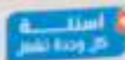
SB pages 22-31 WB pages 86-92

Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A description of a sports star; a blog post; Alice's Adventures in Wonderland
- **Writing :**
  Writing a blog post about a friend
- **Listening :**
  Descriptions of people
- **Speaking :**
  Describing people; talking about likes and dislikes
- **Language :**
  have / has got; can / can't
- **Life Skills :**
  Respect for diversity; resilience



- كراسة المعاصر المتابعة اليومية والامتحانات في نهاية الكتاب
- ملحق (Master your term)



- العلامة تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
- العلامة تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 22 - 25 WB pages 86 & 87



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

blond hair (n)	شعر أشقر	beard (n)	لحية
curly hair (n)	شعر مجعد	moustache (n)	شارب (شنب)
dark hair (n)	شعر داكن	glasses (n)	نظارة
straight hair (n)	شعر غير مجعد	scarf (n)	إيشارب (طرحة)
team (n)	فريق	sports star (n)	نجم رياضى
running (n)	الجرى	grey (n)	رمادى اللون
fans (n)	مشجعين - معجبين	feature (n)	سمة / ميزة
runner (n)	عدّاء / مُتسابق	poor people (n)	الفقراء

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 86

description (n)	وصف	holiday (n)	أجازة
Italian (n)	اللغة الإيطالية- إيطالى الجنسية	of course	بالطبع

Lesson 2

SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 87

smile (d) (v) , (n)	يبتسم - ابتسامة	video games (n)	ألعاب فيديو
footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم	funny (adj)	مضحك
score (d) (v)	يحرز / يسجل	Cairo Tower (n)	برج القاهرة
squash (n)	لعبة الاسكواش	nicely (adv)	بطريقة لطيفة
person (n)	شخص	name (d) (v), (n)	يُسمى / يذكر - اسم

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
give	يعطى	gave	given
build	يبنى	built	built

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
famous	مشهور	unknown	غير معروف
normal	طبيعى - عادى	abnormal	غير طبيعى
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
busy	مشغول	free	حر

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

beard	hair that grows on a man's face or chin	لحية / ذقن
blond	yellow or light brown hair	أشقر (الشعر)
curly	hair that has turns	شعر مجعد
dark	brown or black hair	شعر داكن اللون
Europe	a continent. France, Germany, Italy and Spain are some of the countries in Europe	قارة أوروبا
friendly	behaving in a way to people that shows you like them	ودود
glasses	what you wear over your eyes to help you see better	نظارة
goal	when you win a point in e.g. football	هدف (فى كرة القدم)
kind	wanting to help and be good to people	طيب / عطوف
moustache	hair that grows above a man's top lip الشفاة العليا	شارب (شنب)
score	win points / goals in a game or a match	يسجل (نقاط أو أهداف)
smile	when the corners of your mouth turns up to show that you are happy	ابتسامة/ يبتسم
straight	hair without any turns	شعر غير مجعد
fans	people enjoying watching football matches and players	مشجعين / معجبين

II Listening and Reading

Listening

- on Lesson 1 SB page 23







Mazin : There's my friend, Samir.
Mum : I don't know Samir. What does he look like[1] ?
Mazin : He's got short, dark hair[2].
Mum : Oh, I think I can see him. Has he got glasses ?
Mazin : No, he hasn't. His dad's with him.
Mum : Has Samir's dad got a beard[3] ?
Mazin : Yes, he has.
Mum : Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يشبه | (2) شعر داكن | (3) لحية / ذقن



- on Lesson 2 SB page 24



Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star[1]. He plays football for a very good team in Europe[2]. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner[3].

Check Vocabulary

(1) نجم رياضي | (2) قارة أوروبا | (3) عدّاء سريع

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile[4]. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. In this photo, Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair[5] and a beard[6].

He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people[7]. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans[8].

He has not got much time for hobbies[9], but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

Check Vocabulary

(4) ابتسامة | (5) شعر مجعد | (6) لحية | (7) الفقراء | (8) مشجعين / معجبين | (9) هوايات

• on Lesson 1 WB page 86






The woman in the first picture has got long straight hair and glasses. The man in the second picture has got short curly dark hair and a moustache. The second woman has got short blond hair. The second man has got short dark hair and a beard.

• on Lesson 2 WB page 87

Mohamed Salah can score lots of goals and he can run very fast. He lives in England. He can speak English, of course. He lived in Italy for two years, so he can speak Italian, too! He is famous, so he can't have a normal life. If he goes outside, many people want to talk to him. He is very busy. He can't take many holidays.



Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 25





My favourite sports star is Doaa Elghobashy. She plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 centimetres tall. She's strong and she's fast. She can jump very high ! She's friendly. She always has a big smile.

Videoscript Lesson 2 SB page 24

Of course, football is a popular(1) sport in Egypt. There are many excellent(2) Egyptian footballers(3).

Mohammed Salah is one of the best players in the world. He's played for some famous football clubs in England and Italy.

Hossam Hassan, Mido and Essam el Hadary are all famous Egyptian footballers. They played football for teams in Africa and Europe.

People love playing it ... and watching it.

Thousands of people go to see football clubs like Al-Ahly ... and El-Zamalek.

The country's national(4) side are known as the Pharaohs(5). They often play in the World Cup. This is a tournament(6) for the best teams in the world.

The Pharaohs sometimes win a tournament called the Africa Cup of Nations(7). This is a competition(8) for countries in Africa. In 2019, it was in Egypt !

Do you like playing football ?

Do you like watching football ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) مشهور / محبوب	(2) ممتاز	(3) لاعبى كرة القدم	(4) قومى / وطنى
(5) الفراعنة لقب الفريق القومى لكرة القدم	(6) بطولة	(7) كاس الأمم الأفريقية	(8) منافسة / مسابقة

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 enjoy / like + (inf. + ing)

يستمتع بـ / يحب

ex.: - He enjoys eating pizza in a restaurant.
- I like playing football and watching films.

2 tall / long

- tall (adj)

طويل (تستخدم للأطوال الرأسية «مبانى / أشخاص / أشجار»)

ex.: - My brother is tall (✓).
- My brother is long (✗).

- long (adj)

طويل (تستخدم للأطوال الأفقية / المسافات)

ex.: - My hair is long (✓).
- My hair is tall (✗).

3 Adjectives

- لاحظ أن الصفات تستخدم فى وصف الأسماء ، وتسبقها

ex.: - He is a fast runner.
- He is a kind person.

- الصفة أيضًا يمكن أن تأتى بعد (v. to be)

ex.: - She is beautiful.

4 Adverbs

- لاحظ أن الظرف يتكون بإضافة (ly) للصفة ويأتى بعد الفعل

ex.: - Nader always talks nicely to people. He's very nice.

(١) لاحظ أيضًا أن هناك ظروف لا يضاف لها (ly) ولكن تبقى كما هى

ex.: - He is a fast runner. He runs fast.

(٢) لاحظ أيضًا أن هناك كلمات تنتهى بـ (ly) وتعتبر صفات وليس ظروف مثل (friendly)

ex.: - Mohammed Salah is friendly.

5 dark

مظلم - غامق

ex.: - The room is dark. I can't see.
- My shirt is dark blue.

- لاحظ : تستخدم كلمة dark لوصف hair - eyes - skin لتدل على اللون البنى أو الأسود.

6 glass / a glass / glasses

* **glass** — الزجاج (اسم لا يُعد)

ex.:- Windows are made of glass.

* **a glass** — كوب (اسم يُعد مفرد)

ex.:- Bassem drinks a glass of milk every evening.

* **glasses** — أكواب - نظارة

ex.:- How many glasses of tea do you drink a day ?
- I can't find my glasses. I can't see without them.
- My grandfather is wearing glasses.

7 sport / sports

* **sport (n)** — رياضة

ex.: Tennis is my favourite sport.

* **sports (adj) (n)** — رياضى

ex.:Essam el Hadary is a famous sports star.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

easy for	سهلاً لـ	give money to	يعطى مالاً لـ
look like	يشبه	talk to	يتحدث إلى شخص
know about	يعرف عن	pick up	يلتقط
play for	يلعب لصالح / لأجل	score goals	يحرز أهداف
play → squash	يلعب اسكواش	quite short for	قصير إلى حدٍ ما
play → tennis	يلعب تنس	go at (70 km/h)	يسير بسرعة (٧٠ كيلو متر فى الساعة)
play → volleyball	يلعب كرة الطائرة	jump high	يقفز لأعلى
play → video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو		

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. People who enjoy watching their favourite team in the stadium are called ....
   a. fins b. figs c. fans d. pans
2. Mona has .... hair. It's not straight.
   a. blond b. curly c. long d. short
3. The hair growing over the man's mouth is called ....
   a. feature b. mouse c. moustache d. beard
4. The hair that grows on a man's cheeks خدود and chin ذقن is called ....
   a. bread b. beard c. bird d. bride
5. My sister likes her hair to be .... It's very light brown colour.
   a. blind b. blond c. grey d. dark
6. She's wearing a .... around her neck.
   a. sock b. scarf c. dress d. T-shirt

SB , WB & Previous exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

7. WB The Queen of England is very .... She has got many houses.
   (امتحان مجمع الشرقية - منيا ٢٠٢١)
   a. poor b. ugly c. strong d. rich
8. We play .... by kicking the ball. *(Rafah-North Sinai 2020)*
   a. football b. horse riding c. basketball d. tennis
9. WB Mohammed Salah is very famous, so he can't have a / an .... life.
   a. normal b. unusual c. strange d. busy
10. SB My grandma sometimes gives me presents. She's ....
    a. unfriendly b. poor c. friendly d. strong
11. WB A baby bird is very .... It can't fly for many days.
    (امتحان مجمع بنى سويف - بيا ٢٠٢١)
    a. weak b. poor c. ugly d. bad
12. Mohammed Salah is an Egyptian .... star. He is very famous.
    (Samalout - Minia 2020)
    a. sport b. sporty c. sport's d. sports

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

13. What's your favourite football .... ? – Liverpool.
a. language b. colour c. subject d. team

14. My mother can't see well. She needs to wear ....
a. jackets b. dresses c. glasses d. jeans

15. People around the world have different .... They don't look like each other.
a. dreams b. features c. subjects d. balls

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

16. Mohamed Salah is quite short .... a footballer.
a. on b. from c. for d. in

17. **A :** What does your brother .... like ?
B : He's got short, curly hair.
a. make b. take c. look d. give

III Language

معاك
MaEak App
شاهد وتعلم

(A) have / has got يملك / لديه / عنده



1 **Affirmative statements** الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / We / You / They (اسم جمع) → have got = ('ve got)

ex. They have got blond hair.

He / She / It (اسم مفرد) → has got = ('s got)

ex. She has got dark hair.



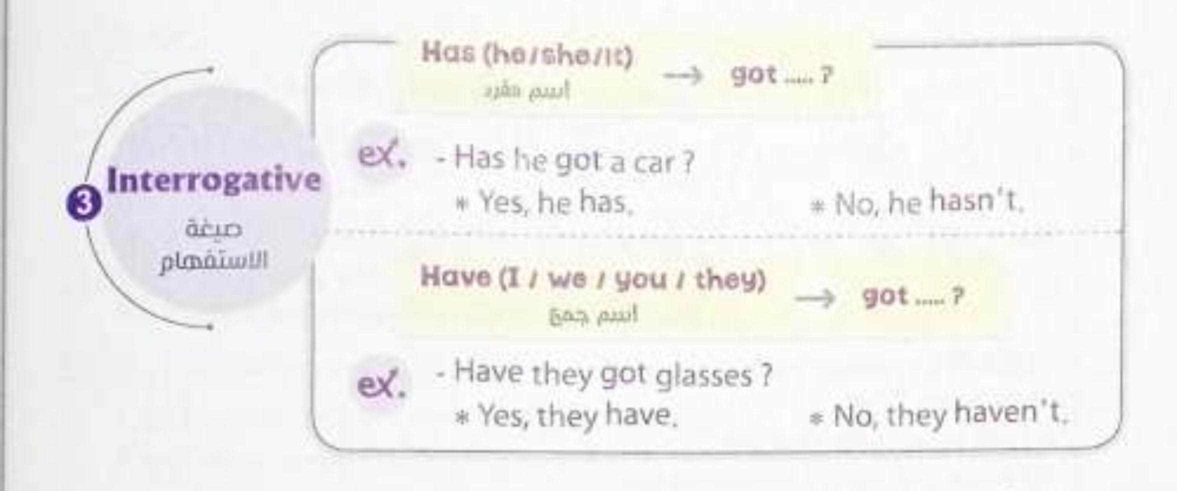
2 **Negative statements** الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I / We / You / They (اسم جمع) → have not got = (haven't) got

ex. We have not (haven't) got cars.

He / She / It (اسم مفرد) → has not got = (hasn't) got

ex. He has not (hasn't) got a beard.



3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Has (he/she/it) اسم مفرد → **got ..... ?**

ex. - Has he got a car ?
* Yes, he has. * No, he hasn't.

Have (I / we / you / they) اسم جمع → **got ..... ?**

ex. - Have they got glasses ?
* Yes, they have. * No, they haven't.

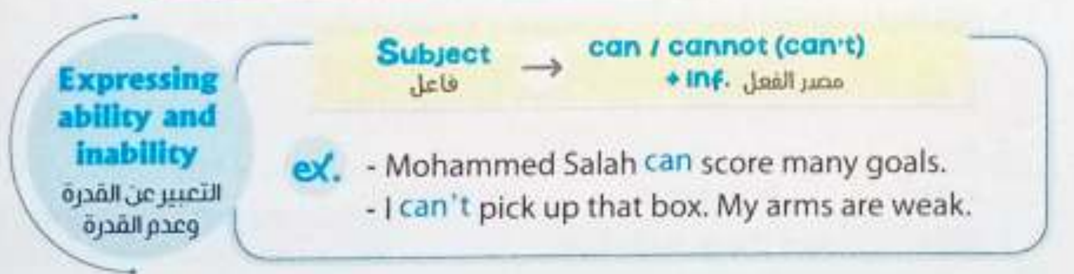
لاحـظ أن :

هناك أفعال أخرى تعطى معنى الملكية.

own = possess

ex. : He owns/possesses a car.

(B) can / can't يستطيع / لا يستطيع



Expressing ability and inability التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة

Subject فاعل → **can / cannot (can't) + inf.** مصدر الفعل

ex. - Mohammed Salah can score many goals.
- I can't pick up that box. My arms are weak.

Asking about ability السؤال عن القدرة

Yes / No questions السؤال بـ(هل)

a Can + subject الفاعل + inf. ?

ex. Can you climb a tree ?
Yes, I can. No, I can't.

Wh-questions السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام

b Question word + can + subject فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل .. ?

ex. A : What can you do, Ahmed ?
B : I can lift heavy weights.

لاحظ أن :

هناك تعبيرات وتركيبات أخرى تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة.

can + inf. = am / is / are able to + inf. = has / have the ability to + inf. / of + (inf. + ing)

can't + inf. = am / is / are not able to + inf. = doesn't / don't have the ability to + (inf.) / of + (inf. + ing)

Examples :

I can drive a car.
= I am able to drive a car.
= I have the ability to drive a car.
= I have the ability of driving a car.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB Mohammed Salah .... score a lot of goals. He is very fast.
(امتحان مجمع الأسكندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢١) (امتحان مجمع سوهاج - البليا ٢٠٢١)
a. can b. must c. mustn't d. has

2. Amira .... got a car. She walks to work. *(El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)*
a. has b. haven't c. hasn't d. have

3. SB I .... got short, curly hair.
a. 've b. 'm c. 's d. 'll

4. SB She .... got blond hair.
a. have b. having c. has d. is having

5. My father has .... a smart phone. *(Deshna - Qena 2020)*
a. get b. got c. gets d. getting

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. .... they got any pencils ?
a. Has b. Are c. Do d. Have

7. .... has got a new laptop.
a. They b. I c. She d. We

8. We .... any bikes.
   a. have got b. haven't got c. has got d. hasn't got
9. Has he got an umbrella ? - No, he ....
   a. haven't b. hasn't c. don't have d. wasn't
10. .... Rahma and you got the same father ? - Yes, we have.
   a. Has b. Does c. Have d. Do

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB Has she got glasses ? - Yes, she **hasn't**. (........)
2. SB **Have** Samir's dad got a beard ? (........)
3. SB We **can't** give money to help poor people. (........)
4. We **has** got an apple tree in the garden. *(Nasser-Beni Suef 2020)* (........)
5. She'**ve** got curly hair. *(West Mahalla - Gharbia 2020)* (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. My sister hasn't **get** a pen. (........)
7. They **has** got pencils. (........)
8. He lives in England. He **can't** speak English well. (........)

Skills Corner

كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 24 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١١٨ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What's the main idea of the passage ?
   - **Mohamed Salah.**

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. What is Mohamed Salah very good at ?
   - ....
3. How did you know that Mohamed Salah is very friendly ?
   - ....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. Salah is my favourite sports star.

١. صلاح هو نجمي الرياضي المفضل.

2. He plays for Liverpool Football Club and the Egyptian National Team.

٢. يلعب لصالح نادي ليفربول لكرة القدم والفريق القومي المصري.

3. He is a fast runner.

٣. إنه عداء سريع.

4. He is very kind and gives money to the poor.

٤. هو عطوف جدا ويعطي أموالا للفقراء.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

can - Are - has - able - can't

1. My sister .... got blond hair.
2. I'm strong. I .... pick up the box.
3. Ayman is .... to play football.
4. .... you able to drive a car ? - Yes, I am.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Mohamed Salah"

....

....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Describing your favourite sports star : وصف نجمك الرياضي المفضل:

- My favourite sports star is .... (Messi) ....
- He / She plays .... (football) ....
- He / She's quite / very .... (fast) ....
- He / She can .... (score goals) ....

General Exercises  LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختار الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Doaa Elghobashy is a .... player.
   a. basketball b. volleyball c. football d. handball
2. She's .... centimetres tall.
   a. 180 b. 118 c. 80 d. 1800
3. Doaa always has a big ....
   a. smile b. smell c. climb d. life
4. Is she strong and fast ?
   a. No, she isn't strong. b. Yes, she is.
   c. Yes, she was . d. No, she isn't fast.

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Kareem asks Yasser about his favourite sports star.

Kareem : What is your favourite sports star ?
Yasser : Mohammed Salah. He plays (1) .... Egypt.
Kareem : (2) .... sport does Mohammed Salah play ?
Yasser : (3) ....
Kareem : How does he help people ?
Yasser : He (4) .... money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt.
Kareem : Does he (5) .... a normal life ?
Yasser : No, he doesn't.
Kareem : Why ?
Yasser : Because he is famous and has a lot of fans.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB Camels are very strong. They .... carry 200 kilos of bags.
   a. can b. cannot c. shouldn't d. mustn't
2. Mohamed Salah is a great ....
   a. carpenter b. goalkeeper c. footballer d. doctor

3. He can run very fast and .... lots of goals.
   a. score b. get c. give d. take
4. Most young people want to have .... It's a fashion.
   a. noses b. beards c. mouths d. necks
5. SB I .... got glasses, but my sister has got glasses.
   a. haven't b. have c. has d. hasn't
6. This man's photo is in all the papers. He's very ....
   a. unknown b. famous c. free d. lazy
7. Has Salma got a pen ? No, she ....
   a. haven't b. has c. hasn't d. have
8. How .... is Mona ? - She's 160 cm.
   a. long b. tall c. deep d. fast
9. France, Germany and Italy are countries in ....
   a. Europe b. Africa c. Asia d. Australia
10. ".........." is the opposite of "fast".
   a. Low b. Slow c. Quick d. Lucky

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. He is able to **running** fast. (..........)
2. **Do** you play the drums ? Yes, I can. (..........)
3. Rodina and Mohammed **has** got a camera. (..........)
4. **Have** she got chips for dinner ? (..........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite sports star"

....
....
....
....
....
....

LESSONS **3 & 4**

SB pages 26 - 28 WB pages 88 & 89



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

children's story	قصة أطفال	drawing (n)	الرسم
angry (adj)	غاضب	guess (ed) (v)	يخمن
painting (n)	الرسم بالفرشاة / التلوين	adventure (n)	مغامرة
scary (adj)	مرعب / مخيف	Wonderland (n)	أرض العجائب
brave (adj)	شجاع	paint (ed) (v)	يدهن / يلون
strange (adj)	غريب	frightened (adj)	خائف / مرعوب
blog post (n)	منشور مدونة	sensible (adj)	عاقل / حكيم
character (n)	شخصية		

تنويه

- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 88

learning (n)	تعلم	diary (n)	مفكرة يومية
regularly (adv)	بانتظام	clear (adj)	واضح
online (adj) (adv)	متصل بالأنترنت	website (n)	موقع على الأنترنت

Lesson 4

SB page 28 WB page 89

simple (adj)	بسيط	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
hearts (n)	قلوب	shout (ed) (v)	يصرخ / يصيح
meaning (n)	معنى	true story (n)	قصة حقيقية
main (adj)	أساسى / رئيسى	decisions (n)	قرارات
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق / يفحص	notebook (n)	دفتر / كراسة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
brave	شجاع	coward	جبان
true	حقيقى	false	زائف / مزيف
able	قادر	unable	غير قادر

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

angry	very cross	غاضب
brave	not easily frightened	شجاع
blog	is a website on which someone writes regularly. It is like an online diary	مدونة على الإنترنت
character	a person in a book or a film	شخصية (فى فيلم أو كتاب)
clever	good at learning things	ماهر
late	arriving after the correct time	متأخر
scary	something that makes you feel frightened	مخيف
sensible	thinking carefully so that you do the right thing	عاقل/ حكيم
twice	two times	مرتان

Writing Skills



★ اتقن مهارة الكتابة عن طريق :

. Writing skills فى نهاية كل وحدة التى تمكنك من تكوين وترتيب الجمل ومهارة الكتابة.

. اجابة كل الموضوعات الإنشائية.

المعاصر فى اللغة الانجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

II Reading and Listening



Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 26

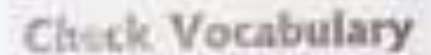
All about me

Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark curly hair[1]. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers.

My favourite school subject is history[2]. I love learning about the past. I like maths and science[3], too. I do not like art[4] because I am not very good at drawing or painting.

I often play sport after school. My favourite[5] sport is basketball[6]. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming[7], too. I go swimming twice a week.

At home, I like reading and playing video games[8]. I do not like watching TV. I think it is boring[9].



Check Vocabulary

(1) شعر مجعد	(2) مادة التاريخ	(3) العلوم	(4) الرسم	(5) مفضل	(6) كرة السلة	(7) السباحة	(8) ألعاب فيديو	(9) ممل



Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 27



Girl 1 : Let's play a game. I'm looking at a girl. Who is it ?

Girl 2 : Does she like watching TV ?

Girl 1 : No, she doesn't.

Girl 2 : Does she like swimming ?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does.

Girl 2 : It's Noha.

Girl 1 : Good ! OK. Number two. Who is it ?



Girl 2 : Does she like swimming ?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does. She loves swimming !

Girl 2 : Does she like playing basketball ?

Girl 1 : No, she doesn't.

Girl 2 : It's Dina.

Girl 1 : Well done ! Three. Who is this ?

Girl 2 : Does she like watching TV ?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does.

Girl 2 : It's Eman.

Girl 1 : No, it isn't !

Girl 2 : Does she like basketball ?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does.

Girl 2 : It's Maya.

Girl 1 : Yes !

Girl 2 : OK, so the last one loves painting, she likes watching TV and she doesn't like playing basketball. It's Eman.

Girl 1 : Yes again !







Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 28

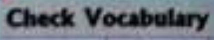
Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

By Lewis Carroll

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous(1) children's story. Alice's adventure(2) begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting(3), but it is a strange place. She is a sensible(4) girl, but she does not understand Wonderland. Alice is also brave(5) and clever. She meets a lot of interesting characters. Alice often sees the White Rabbit. The White Rabbit is very busy – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.







Check Vocabulary

(1) مشهور	(2) مغامرة	(3) شيق	(4) عاقل / حكيم	(5) شجاع



The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters[6].



The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary[7] person. She is always angry[8] and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not frightened[9] of her. At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.

Check Vocabulary

(6) شخصيات	(7) مخيف	(8) غاضب	(9) خائف

on Lesson 3 WB page 88

What is your favourite subject ?

- My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is Science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.

Which sport do you like ?

- I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at it.

What do you do in the evening ?

- I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too.

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 Because ⟶ جملة (فعل + فاعل) — لأن (تربط السبب بالنتيجة)

ex.:- Ahmed is good at basketball because he is tall and fast.

2 another / other

* another + اسم مفرد — اخر

ex.:- I can see another boy.

* other + اسم جمع

ex.: - I can see other boys. الآخرون

3 too أيضًا (تأتى فى نهاية الجملة)

ex.: - My brother likes swimming. I like swimming, too.

4 interesting / interested

* **interesting (adj.)** شيق / رائع (وصف الأشياء والأشخاص)

ex.: - She meets a lot of interesting characters. رائع

- She thinks that Wonderland is interesting. شيق / مثير

* **interested (adj.)** (noun / inf. + ing) مهتم بـ) ويتبعها حرف الجر in متبوعًا بـ)

ex.: - She is interested in history.

- She is interested in reading novels.

5 help + مفعول به + → inf. مصدر / → to + inf. المصدر

ex.: - We help the poor people live / to live a happy life.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

live with	يعيش مع (شخص)	shout at	يصيح فى
live in	يعيش فى	play / do a sport	يمارس رياضة
frightened of + (inf. + ing/n)	خائف من		
write in order	يكتب بالترتيب	twice a week	مرتين فى الأسبوع
learn about the past	يتعلم عن الماضى	do maths	يحل مسائل الرياضيات
do art	يقوم بالرسم	make good decisions	يتخذ قرارات جيدة
has no time	ليس لديه وقت	know a lot about	يعرف الكثير عن
get angry	يغضب	feel hungry	يشعر بالجوع
at the end of	فى نهاية	feel happy	يشعر بالسعادة

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. We often get .... when we are unhappy about something.
   a. angry b. happy c. pleased d. content
2. The word .... has the same meaning as "frightening".
   a. scared b. scary c. frightened d. afraid
3. He likes .... with water colours.
   a. doing b. learning c. reading d. painting
4. A .... person is happy to do something dangerous.
   a. strange b. brave c. frightened d. funny
5. My father is .... He thinks well.
   a. bored b. nervous c. sensible d. strange

SB . WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. WB I love learning about how things work, so I love ....
   a. history b. Arabic c. science d. English
7. WB A .... is a person in a book or a film. (امتحان مجمع لنا - دشنا ٢٠٢١)
   a. character b. driver c. doctor d. farmer
8. I like adventure stories, they are .... *(Menia 2020)*
   a. excited b. interested c. amazed d. exciting
9. SB I read Alice's .... in Wonderland which is a wonderful children's story.
   a. History b. Sports c. Adventures d. Comedy

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. You should do exercises ....
    a. badly b. regularly c. nicely d. funnily
11. "Brave" is the opposite of "........".
    a. famous b. coward c. crazy d. late
12. Adel Emam is the .... character in the new film.
    a. mean b. main c. mine d. man
13. A woman who rules a country is called a ....
    a. hero b. manager c. king d. queen

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. She likes .... art.
    a. doing b. making c. giving d. having
15. How often do you go to the library ? – .... a week.
    a. Two b. Second c. Twice d. One
16. Good teachers always .... good decisions.
    a. give b. make c. do d. order

III Language

• هناك بعض الأفعال التى يمكن أن يتبعها (inf. + ing) أو (noun) اسم

like / love / enjoy / prefer / don't like / hate / dislike

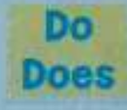
(inf. + ing / noun)



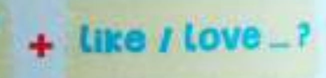
ex. - I like swimming.
- They don't like watching TV.
- Salma likes maths.
- She loves learning about the past.
- She doesn't like painting.

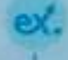
• وعند الاستفهام (بسؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد) باستخدام هذه الأفعال يكون السؤال كالآتى :

Interrogative
فى السؤال



+


+




Do you like playing tennis ?
- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

ex. Does she like playing tennis ?
- Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

* هناك بعض الصفات تتبعها حروف جر ثم (inf. + ing) أو (noun) اسم :

good at / interested in / bad at → **inf. + ing / noun**

- Ahmed is good at English.
- Huda is interested in reading adventure stories.

لاحظ أن الأفعال :

like / love / prefer

• إذا سبقها ('d = would) فيتبعها (to + inf.)

He'd like to drive a small car.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB .... she like watching TV ? - Yes, she does.
   a. Do b. Does c. Doing d. Don't
2. WB I don't like .... computer games. (امتحان مجمع القلعوية - الخانكة ٢٠٢١)
   a. play b. playing c. plays d. played
3. SB Noha .... like swimming.
   a. don't b. isn't c. aren't d. doesn't
4. SB Dina likes .... very much.
   a. paint b. painted c. painting d. to painting
5. I don't like .... (El Agami-Alex. 2020)
   a. fly b. flew c. flying d. flown

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. Captain Bassem is good at .... guns.
   a. use b. to use c. uses d. using
7. Hoda doesn't enjoy .... action films.
   a. watching b. watch c. to watch d. watches

8. They'd like .... computer games.
   a. play b. to play c. plays d. playing
9. He prefers .... maths.
   a. do b. did c. doing d. does
10. She doesn't .... staying up late.
   a. like b. likes c. liked d. to like

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. Emad likes **watch** football matches on TV. *(El Fashn-Beni suef 2020)* (..........)
2. WB Does your father like **travel** ? (..........)
3. Does she like **play** chess ? *(Auseem-Giza 2020)* (..........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. I hate **walk** in the sun in summer. (..........)
5. Baleigh is interested in **listens** to music. (..........)
6. Would you prefer **ride** bikes ? (..........)
7. Ayman dislikes **to have** dirty pets. (..........)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 28 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٣٤ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   - **Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.**

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. How many characters did Alice meet in Wonderland ?
   - ....
3. Who helped Alice find different places and characters in Wonderland ?
   - ....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. I'm Yunis. I live in Alexandria with my parents.

١. أنا يونس. أعيش في مدينة الإسكندرية مع والداي.

2. My favourite subject is history.

٢. مادتي المفضلة هي التاريخ.

3. I don't like art as I'm not good at drawing.

٣. أنا لا أحب مادة التربية الفنية لأنني لست جيدًا في الرسم.

4. My favourite sport is basketball.

٤. رياضتي المفضلة هي كرة السلة.

5. I go swimming twice a week.

٥. أذهب إلى السباحة مرتين في الأسبوع.

6. I like reading and playing video games at home.

٦. أحب القراءة ولعب ألعاب الفيديو بالمنزل.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

doesn't - drive - driving - playing - in

1. Samira is interested .... eating pizza.
2. Do you like .... tennis ? - No , I don't.
3. He .... love painting.
4. Leen would like to .... a small car.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدروس قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite story"

....

....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Describing a character from a story:

عند وصف شخصية من قصة:

- He's / She's .... صفة .
- He / She .... فعل .

ex.: - Alice is a sensible girl, but she doesn't understand Wonderland.
- The White Rabbit is very busy. He always runs fast.
- The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary person.
- The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly.

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Alaa about his favourite sport.

Ahmed : What's your favourite sport ?

Alaa : (1) .... is my favourite sport.

Ahmed : Basketball ! (2) .... are you good at it ?

Alaa : Because I am tall and (3) ....

Ahmed : Where do you play it ?

Alaa : I play it in the club.

Ahmed : How (4) .... do you play it ?

Alaa : Twice a week.

Ahmed : Can I play with you ?

Alaa : Yes, of (5) ....

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous children's story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was strange but interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, brave and clever girl. **She** met the White Rabbit that was always late but ran fast. The Cheshire Cat was a funny animal which helped Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts was a scary person and she shouted at people but Alice was not frightened of her. At the end of the story, all the characters helped Alice so she could go home again.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does this passage talk about ?

....

2. How did the Cheshire Cat help Alice ?

....

3. Why do you think Alice was brave ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The worst character is ....

a. Alice b. Cheshire Cat
c. The Queen of Hearts d. King

5. Alice met a lot of interesting .... in Wonderland.
   a. characters b. kings c. places d. blog posts
6. The underlined pronoun "**She**" refers to ....
   a. the Queen of Hearts b. Alice
   c. the Cheshire Cat d. the White Rabbit

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... teaches us many things about the past.
   a. Geography b. Maths c. Algebra d. History
2. SB Yunis doesn't like watching TV because he thinks it is ....
   a. interesting b. boring c. beautiful d. exciting
3. Does Toka .... playing tennis ?
   a. likes b. to like c. liked d. like
4. You can write some information in your .... post.
   a. book b. office c. blog d. notebook
5. They love .... about science.
   a. learn b. learning c. learned d. learns
6. I don't like .... because I'm not good at painting.
   a. art b. history c. science d. maths
7. WB A .... person makes good decisions قرارات.
   a. lazy b. foolish c. sensible d. funny
8. I'm always .... of dogs.
   a. frightening b. frighten c. terrifying d. frightened
9. Do you like basketball ? - Yes, I ....
   a. do b. does c. is d. have
10. When Mr Ahmed is angry, he .... at people.
   a. smiles b. shouts c. goes d. runs

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. He likes **eat** ice cream. (...........)
2. I am not very good at **draw**. (...........)
3. How often **do** Samar play tennis ? (...........)
4. He'd like **going** to the park. (...........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A famous children's story"

....
....
....

LESSONS **5 & 6**

SB pages 29 & 30 WB pages 90 & 91



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

playground (n)	ملعب	wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك
best friend (n)	أفضل صديق	storm (n)	عاصفة
classroom (n)	حجرة الدراسة	personality (n)	شخصية
secret (n)	سر	appearance (n)	مظهر / هيئة

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 29 WB page 90

call (ed) (v)	يُسمى / يدعى	island (n)	جزيرة
pool (n)	حمام سباحة	review (n)	مقال نقدي

Lesson 6

SB page 30 WB page 91

travel (led) (v)	يسافر	join (ed) (v)	ينضم
difference (n)	اختلاف	connect (ed) (v)	يربط / يتصل

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
tell	يخبر	told	told

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
easy	سهل	difficult	صعب
remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

together	with one or more people	معًا
wheelchair	a chair with wheels, for people who cannot walk	كرسي متحرك
appearance	what the person looks like	مظهر
personality	what the person is like	شخصية
hobbies	what the person likes doing	هوايات

II Reading and Listening



on Lesson 6 SB page 30

Who's your best friend ?



My best friend(1) is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing video games(2). Those are my favourite hobbies, too !

Basel has got a wheelchair(3) because he cannot walk. It is not easy for Basel to travel around school. I open doors for Basel and I help him to get things in the classroom.

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a problem(4). We do a lot of things together(5). He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground(6). Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!

I like Basel because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

Fady, 12

Check Vocabulary

(1) أفضل صديق	(2) ألعاب فيديو	(3) كرسي متحرك	(4) مشكلة	(5) معًا	(6) ملعب



Listening

- on Lesson 5 WB page 90

1. My name's Nevine. I like sports and I love playing tennis.
2. I'm Sayed. My favourite subject is English and I like writing stories.
3. Hi, I'm Maya. I like art. I don't like drawing but I love painting.
4. I'm Rami. I love swimming, but I don't like swimming in the sea. It's cold.
5. My name's Lina and this is my sister Maya. We don't like watching TV but we like reading books.



Reading

- on Lesson 5 WB page 90



My favourite book is Treasure Island. It is by Robert Louis Stevenson. It is about a brave boy called Jim. He travels in a big boat to an island. It is very far from his home. The boat has got many scary men on it and they all want to find some money on the island. It is very exciting.



My favourite book is Anne of Green Gables by Lucy Maud Montgomery. It is about an orphan girl called Anne. She goes to live with a brother and sister in the country. Life is not easy for her and she has many adventures, but Anne is a sensible girl. It is a good book.



My favourite book is called Gulliver's Travels by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of them are very friendly, but some of them are scary. I like the book very much.

• on Lesson 7 SB page 31

Magda has got a lot of hobbies. She likes reading and sport. She likes playing basketball and she likes playing tennis, but her favourite sport is swimming. She loves swimming! Magda doesn't like playing video games and she also doesn't like playing chess.

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 travel - travel around

* **travel** يُسافر لدولة أخرى / لبلدة أخرى

ex.:- Ahmed travelled to France last week.

* **travel around** يتجول فى مكان

ex.:- SB It's easy for Basel to travel around school.

2 He's a lot of fun. = He is very funny.

هو شخص لديه الكثير من المرح / شخص مرح

3 Using joining words to connect ideas. استخدام كلمات الربط لربط الأفكار

and / because / but

• تستخدم (and) للعطف والإضافة.

ex.:- He goes to all of his lessons and we have lunch together.

• تستخدم (but) لربط الأفكار المتناقضة.

ex.:- Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair !

• تستخدم (because) لربط السبب بالنتيجة.

ex.:- I like Basel because he has a lot of fun.

4 Whose / Who's

* **Whose ..... ?** لمن / ملك من ... ؟ (كلمة استفهام تسأل عن الملكية)

ex.:- **A :** Whose bag is this ? **B :** It's Ali's.

* **Who's = Who is ..... ?** من يكون ... ؟

ex.:- **A :** Who's your best friend ? **B :** Ali.

5 It's + صفة + (for + اسم / ضمير مفعول) + to + inf. المصدر

ex.: - SB It is not easy (for Basel) to travel around the city.

- It is important (for Hala) to study hard.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

easy for	سهل لـ	difficult for ...	صعب على ...
in a wheelchair	فى كرسى متحرك	make sure	يتأكد
different from	مختلف عن	get things	يحصل على الأشياء
work on a boat	يعمل على مركب	far from home	بعيدًا عن المنزل
on the island	على الجزيرة	(be) written by	كتب بواسطة
do things	يقوم بأداء أشياء	a book by	كتاب تم تأليفه عن طريق (اسم الشخص)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. You should have a good ...... when you have an interview.
   a. size b. appearance c. color d. difference
2. You shouldn't tell people about your ....
   a. book b. house c. dress d. secrets
3. People who can't walk can use a ...... to travel around.
   a. chair b. wheel c. wheelchair d. ship
4. Magdy has a good .... He is very kind and sensible.
   a. person b. personality c. hair d. beard

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. WB My favourite book is ...... "Treasure Island".
   a. called b. played c. opened d. travelled
6. SB I like Basel because he is a lot of ....
   a. fun b. fans c. fins d. falls

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. .... short stories helps young children improve their language.
   a. Speaking b. Walking c. Reading d. Calling
8. Ali is tall but his mother is short. They are ....
   a. difficult b. different c. the same d. difference
9. Mohammed Salah .... Liverpool Football Club in 2018.
   a. called b. opened c. joined d. walked

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

10. This is an exciting book. It was written .... Naguib Mahfouz.
    a. in b. on c. by d. from
11. Children who can't walk can .... a lot of things using wheelchairs.
    a. make b. give c. do d. have
12. Basel can't walk. It's not easy .... him to travel around school.
    a. about b. for c. in d. of
13. He lived .... the island alone for 21 years.
    a. on b. from c. about d. under
14. Travelling .... Cairo in the rush hour ساعة الذروة is not easy.
    a. about b. around c. above d. under

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 30 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٤٥ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What's the main idea of the passage ?
   - **Basel is my best friend.**

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. Why is Basel using a wheelchair ?
   - ....
3. What does Fady do with Basel ?
   - ....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

التدريب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

A. Read the sentences

1. My best friend is Basel. He is kind and funny.
   باسل هو صديقي المفضل فهو طيب ومرح.
2. He likes reading and playing video games.
   هو يحب القراءة وألعاب الفيديو.
3. Basel has got a wheelchair because he can't walk.
   باسل لديه كرسي متحرك لأنه لا يستطيع المشي.
4. We study and have meals together.
   نحن نذاكر ونتناول الوجبات معًا.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

but - because - eat - eating - to

1. I like Ali .... he tells funny jokes.
2. She likes .... pizza.
3. Salma is clever, ... she can't solve the problem.
4. He is able .... cycle around the city.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدروس قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :**

"Your best friend"

....

....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Discussing your favourite book:

مناقشة كتابك المفضل:

- I love reading books by .... (اسم الكاتب/المؤلف).
- My favourite book is .... (اسم الكتاب).
- It's about a girl / a boy called .... (اسم الشخصية الرئيسية).
- The other characters are .... (اسماء الشخصيات الفرعية).
- In this book, the boy / girl likes .... (ما تحبه الشخصية).
- I like .... (اسم الشخصية التي تحبها) because he/she .... (السبب).

General Exercises  LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. What is your best friend called ?
   a. Omar b. Yasser c. Basel d. Tarek
2. He has got .... hair and brown eyes.
   a. curly b. blond c. long d. straight
3. Basel is ....
   a. unfriendly b. coward c. kind d. unkind
4. What does he like doing ? - He likes ....
   a. reading b. playing video games
   c. drawing d. a & b

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ramy and Kamal are talking about their favourite subjects.

Ramy : What are your favourite school subjects ?

Kamal : I like English and (1) ....

Ramy : (2) .... do you like history ?

Kamal : To learn about the past.
(3) .... about you, Ramy ?

Ramy : I (4) .... art and computer studies.

Kamal : Why do you like computer studies ?

Ramy : Because I like playing computer (5) ....

Kamal : Oh, me too.

Ramy : Fantastic !

Kamal : OK. Let's play together.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A .... is a place where we do sports.
   a. funfair b. fair c. waterwheel d. playground
2. Something hidden from others is called a ....
   a. secret b. secretary c. problem d. game

3. My .... friend is Abdel Rahman. He helps me a lot.
   a. worst b. bad c. tall d. best
4. My teacher has got .... hair. It hasn't got any turns.
   a. straight b. curly c. blond d. dark
5. SB It is important to be .... like Alice.
   a. coward b. weak c. brave d. sad
6. My sister Leen has got long hair .... brown eyes.
   a. and b. because c. but d. so
7. My father is very busy, ... he does sports every day.
   a. because b. but c. so d. and
8. It's important .... sport regularly.
   a. do b. doing c. done d. to do
9. SB Basel has got a .... because he can't walk.
   a. table b. ladder c. wheelchair d. pool
10. He likes reading and .... video games.
   a. playing b. giving c. trying d. hurrying

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Has your father **gets** glasses ? (........)
2. WB Nevine loves **play** tennis. (........)
3. He'd like **drinking** orange juice. (........)
4. WB Rami loves basketball **and** he doesn't like volleyball. (........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review on your favourite book"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on unit 3

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار
إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Yunis has got short, ... curly hair.
   a. dark b. brown c. grey d. blue
2. Yunis's favourite subject is ....
   a. art b. science c. maths d. history
3. He doesn't like ....
   a. science b. history c. art d. geography
4. He is not good at ....
   a. singing b. eating c. drawing d. cooking

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tarek is telling Tamer about his best friend.

Tamer : What is your best friend's name ?

Tarek : He is (1) .... Basel.

Tamer : What does he (2) .... like ?

Tarek : He has got curly hair and green eyes.

Tamer : What (3) .... he like doing ?

Tarek : He likes reading and playing video (4) ....

Tamer : What is he good at ?

Tarek : He is good at (5) .... football.

Tamer : Wonderful !

Tarek : I think he will be a great footballer.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I have got many friends, but Akram is my best friend. He has got short, dark straight hair. <u>He</u> lives in Qalyoubia Governorate with his mum,

dad and two sisters. His favourite subject is history because he loves learning about the past. He also likes maths and science. He doesn't like art because he isn't good at drawing or painting. His favourite sport is swimming. He goes swimming **twice** a week.

He is a big fan of Liverpool Sports Club and Mohamed Salah. He always watches football matches on TV and sometimes goes to the stadium. In the stadium, he watches matches of our national team.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

2. How often does Akram go swimming ?

....

3. Why do you think Akram sometimes goes to the stadium ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Akram has got short, ... straight hair.
   a. dark b. light c. red d. brown
5. The underlined pronoun "**He**" refers to ....
   a. Mohammed Salah b. Akram
   c. Akram's father d. Akram's friend
6. The underlined word "**twice**" means ....
   a. three times b. two times c. four times d. one time

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. People who like something or admire someone are called ....
   a. fans b. pans c. vans d. hats
2. SB Mohamed Salah is a sports ....
   a. moon b. planet c. star d. class
3. He has got a lovely .... , so all people like him.
   a. smile b. problem c. moon d. course

4. At school, we play football in the ....
   a. hall   b. playground   c. gym   d. office
5. I admire the .... of Dr Magdi Yacoub.
   a. person   b. personality   c. personal   d. personally
6. Ayman has .... a smartphone.
   a. gets   b. getting   c. got   d. get
7. I always help my sister .... things at home.
   a. ride   b. do   c. eat   d. drive
8. Leen likes .... to her father.
   a. talk   b. talks   c. talking   d. talked
9. Do they .... making noise in class ?
   a. enjoy   b. to enjoy   c. enjoys   d. enjoyed
10. The first .... on Monday morning is science.
   a. glass   b. lesson   c. classroom   d. bottle

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. <u>Has</u> they got their presents ? (..........)
2. I like English <u>but</u> maths. (..........)
3. SB Does he like <u>play</u> basketball ? (..........)
4. She is strong. She <u>can't</u> jump high. (..........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your best friend"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Quiz on units 1,2&3

أختبار تراكمى على الوحدات (١، ٢، ٣)

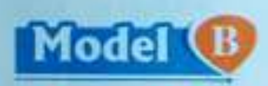
- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (B) or (A) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة فى الوحدات



Marks

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. .... stories are exciting and dangerous.
   a. Comedy b. Romantic c. Adventure d. Funny
2. Gymnastics .... you to stay strong.
   a. to help b. help c. helping d. helps
3. She .... curly hair.
   a. is b. does c. has d. have
4. People who can't walk can use a .... to travel around.
   a. stick b. wheelchair c. wheel d. ship
5. Some children .... to school in Egypt.
   a. recycle b. swim c. cycle d. follow



Marks

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. They like .... in the sea .
   a. swam b. swims c. swim d. swimming
2. This mobile is ....
   a. Dina's b. Dinas' c. Dina d. Dinas
3. A .... person is happy to do something dangerous.
   a. strange b. brave c. frightened d. funny
4. Doing work for no money is a/an .... work.
   a. bad b. daily c. adventure d. voluntary
5. Egypt is a big .... in Africa.
   a. town b. village c. country d. city

Review A

SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 93 & 94





on Lesson 1 SB page 32

My family By Lina

1 B

This is my aunt. Her name's Amal. She's my mum's sister. She's got long, dark curly[1] hair and she's got glasses. Aunt Amal is very kind.

2 D

This is my uncle. His name's Nader and he's got short, dark hair. Uncle Nader is very tall ! He's a teacher[2] and he's very clever.

3 A



Aunt Amal and Uncle Nader have got two children - a son[3] and a daughter[4]. They're my cousins. Their names are Fares and Malak. This is Fares. He's five. He's got short, curly hair and he's very friendly[5].

4 C



Malak is two. She's got short, straight[6] hair. She likes playing with her toys[7]. She usually has a big smile[8]. I think she's very funny[9].

Check Vocabulary

(1) مجعد (غير مستقيم)	(2) مدرس	(3) ابن	(4) ابنة	(5) ودود
(6) مستقيم	(7) ألعاب أطفال	(8) ابتسامة	(9) مضحك	



on Lesson 2 SB page 33



Woman : What time do you get up, Shady ?

Shady : I usually get up at quarter[1] to seven on a school day.

Woman : How do you travel to school ?

Shady : I always walk[2] to school with my brother. We never go by car.

Woman : Do you like school ?

Shady : Yes, I do! My lessons are interesting[3] and I see my friends. I always sit next to my best friend, Hassan, in lessons.

Woman : And what do you do after school ?

Shady : I sometimes play sport[4]. On Mondays, I play football, and on Wednesdays, I go swimming.

Woman : Do you have any other hobbies[5] ?Do you play chess[6] ?

Shady : No! I never play chess. I don't like it. But I often listen to music[7] or watch TV.

Check Vocabulary

(1) ربع | (2) يمشي | (3) شيق | (4) رياضة | (5) هوايات | (6) لعبة الشطرنج | (7) الموسيقى

WB page 93



Aya: Hi, my name's Aya. My friends have got long, straight hair but I've got short, curly hair. We go to a girls' school in Cairo. My favourite school subject[1] is art. I love drawing[2]. I'm not very good at it, but I want to be ! We have art at quarter to eleven, after maths and before English. I've got one brother and one sister. My brother is very friendly and my sister is very clever[3].



Check Vocabulary

(1) مادة دراسية | (2) الرسم | (3) ذكي / ماهر



- WB page 93

(a) twins



(b) Huda



(c) Amal



(d) Lina



Teacher : OK children. It's time to go home. I've got four school bags here.
Magda : Huda's bag has got flowers on it. That's her bag there.
Maya : That's Amal's bag. It has got birds on it.
Nevine : Lina's bag is red. It hasn't got any pictures on it.
Teacher : Good, but I've now got one bag with tennis balls on it. Is it your bag, Magda ?
Magda : No, it isn't my bag. I think it's one of the twins' bags.
Teacher : Yes, but which twin, Azza or Dalia ?



- WB page 94



Narrator 1

Boy 1 : I often go to the cinema with my uncle.

Narrator 2

Girl 1 : Do you like playing chess ?

Narrator 3

Girl 1 : I have got a long, white coat[1].

Narrator 4

Boy 1 : After break, we go to the hall[2].

Narrator 5

Girl 1 : My uncle has got glasses[3] and a beard[4].

Check Vocabulary

(1) معطف / بالطو (2) صالة (3) نظارة (4) لحية

Mini-Test on Unit 1

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... is your grandfather's father.
   a. Grandchild b. Grandfather
   c. Great-grandfather d. Father
2. She eats .... food so that she can stay strong.
   a. unhealthy b. healthy c. bad d. happy
3. He usually plays basketball .... Fridays.
   a. at b. on c. in d. about
4. I .... in Aswan with my family.
   a. live b. lives c. living d. is lived
5. He .... like walking to school. He prefers to go by bus.
   a. isn't b. doesn't c. wasn't d. aren't
6. Teachers should .... between their work at school and their lives at home.
   a. balance b. block c. practise d. dive
7. .... is an interesting sport.
   a. Mathematics b. Physics
   c. Gymnastics d. Painting
8. A/An .... is a room at the top of a house.
   a. attic b. cinema c. park d. aisle
9. "...................." is the opposite of "female".
   a. Mail b. Meal c. Male d. Mile
10. The girl is not a/ an ...., she has a father and a mother.
    a. exciting b. difficult
    c. orphan d. lazy

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They are twins. Them mother is a doctor. (.............)
2. Lamia often listening to her best friend. (.............)
3. What's he name ? - Ali. (.............)
4. He is call Omar. (.............)

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your family"

....
....
....
....



If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

Mini-Test on Unit 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

They're talking about school subjects.

A : Hi, Ali
B : Hi, Ahmed.
A : What's your favourite (1)................... of the week ?
B : It (2) .... Monday.
A : Why ?
B : (3) .... I have art and P.E.
A : What's your favourite subject ?
B : Science.
A : (4) .... do you have it ?
B : I have science (5) .... Tuesday.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My favourite subject is .... I love acting.
   a. economics b. drama
   c. science d. maths
2. Amir .... basketball after school.
   a. often plays b. often play
   c. often playing d. is often playing
3. I .... breakfast at 7 o'clock every morning.
   a. has b. having c. have d. am having
4. Do you want to join the .... this week ?
   a. books's club b. books' club
   c. book club d. book club's
5. On a .... holiday, I always go to the beach.
   a. kind b. typical c. bad d. silly
6. It's healthy and cheap to .... to school.
   a. cycle b. recycle c. reread d. reuse
7. A canoe is a long, narrow ....
   a. box b. boat c. ball d. bell
8. .... is time to rest.
   a. Plan b. Broke c. Break d. Bread
9. A snowmobile can travel on ....
   a. water b. air c. snow d. rail
10. I can put my school tools in a pencil ....
    a. cup b. cube c. case d. bin

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Ali usually arrives <u>in</u> school at 8 : 00. (..........)
2. <u>What</u> is good at football ? – Baher. (..........)
3. We <u>always</u> go to the beach in winter. (..........)
4. It's <u>Judys'</u> pen. (..........)

If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

ممتاز
جيد جدا
جيد
غير جيد

Mini-Test on Unit 3

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She thinks carefully. She is ....
   a. scary b. sensible c. poor d. weak
2. Mohammed Salah has a lot of ....
   a. fans b. fins c. fats d. pans
3. Ramadan Sobhy can .... a lot of goals because he can run fast.
   a. give b. go c. point d. score
4. Most people coming from Denmark and Sweden have .... hair.
   a. dark b. black c. blond d. blue
5. The hair that grows above a man's top lip is called ....
   a. shoulder b. moustache
   c. beard d. chin
6. A big .... on your face can make people happy.
   a. smell b. smile c. snack d. silk
7. A / An .... is a chair with wheels for people who cannot walk.
   a. armchair b. sofa
   c. wheelchair d. deck chair
8. He lives in England. He .... speak English.
   a. wasn't b. don't c. can d. can't
9. The woman has .... long hair.
   a. get b. got c. gets d. getting
10. She is very busy. She .... take any holidays.
   a. can b. can't c. don't d. could

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He is not clever. He <u>can</u> solve the problem. (............)
2. <u>Has</u> you got dark hair ? (............)
3. She loves <u>play</u> chess. (............)
4. What food <u>does</u> you like ? (............)

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

" An exciting story you read."

....
....
....
....



We're using technology!

SB pages 34:43 WB pages 95:101

Objectives

- **Reading :**

  A text message conversation; a text about hobbies

- **Writing :**

  A paragraph and a poster about online safety

- **Listening :**

  A description of technology in a classroom; a phone call

- **Speaking :**

  Describing the technology in your classroom; a guessing game; giving instructions

- **Language :**

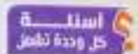
  There is / There are; the present continuous

- **Life Skills :**

  Problem solving; resilience.



* كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة اليومية والابحاث فى نهاية الكتاب.
* ملحق (Master your term).



* العلامة تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
* العلامة تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.

LESSONS **1 & 2**

SB pages 34 : 37 WB pages 95 & 96



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

laptop computer (n)	كمبيوتر محمول	3D printers	الطابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد
picture (n)	صورة طبيعية أو مرسومة	whiteboard (n)	سبورة بيضاء
tablet (n)	كمبيوتر لوحى	classmate (n)	زميل فصل
mobile phone (n)	تليفون محمول	email (n)	رسالة بريد إلكترونى
selfie (n)	صورة فوتوغرافية بالكاميرا الأمامية للتليفون	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
mouse (n)	فأرة	phone charger (n)	شاحن الهاتف
printer (n)	الطابعة	MP3 player (n)	مشغل الأغانى

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 34 & 35 WB page 95

print (ed) (v)	يطبع (ورق)	charge (d) (v)	يشحن (كهربيًا)

Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37 WB page 96

text message (n)	رسالة نصية	great (adj)	رائع / عظيم
moment (n)	لحظة	video call (n)	مكالمة مرئية بالفيديو
paper (n)	ورق	icon (n)	أيقونة / رمز
plastic model (n)	نموذج بلاستيكى	click (ed) = tap (ped) (v)	ينقر / يضغط
design (ed) (v)	يصمم / يرسم تصميم		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
know يعرف	knew	known
mean يعنى / يقصد	meant	meant

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
new	جديد	old	قديم
online	متصل بالإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
necessary	ضرورى	unnecessary	غير ضرورى

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

charge	increase the power of a battery	يشحن (كهربيًا)
click	press a mouse or icon to make something happen on a computer	ينقر / يضغط
email	a letter or message you send on a computer	رسالة بريد إلكترونى
icon	a small picture on a computer screen	أيقونة / رمز
laptop computer	a small, light computer that you can carry easily	كمبيوتر محمول
mobile phone	a small phone that you can carry with you	تليفون محمول
mouse	an object you move so that you can read and write on a computer screen	فأرة
MP3 player	a machine that can play music	مشغل موسيقى
online	using the internet	متصل بالإنترنت
phone charger	you use a phone charger to increase the battery power of a mobile phone	شاحن (تليفون محمول)
printer	a machine that can print documents from a computer	طابعة
selfie	a photo you take of yourself	صورة فوتوغرافية بالكاميرا الأمامية للتليفون
tap	touch quickly with your finger	ينقر / يضغط
text message	sentences you write on a mobile phone	رسالة نصية
tablet	a flat, mobile computer that is smaller than a laptop computer	كمبيوتر لوحى
video call	a way to talk to and see people online	مكالمة بالفيديو
website	an internet page with information about something	موقع على الإنترنت

whiteboard	a classroom board that is sometimes connected to a computer سبورة بيضاء
3D printer	a machine that can print documents in 3D from a computer طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد

II Reading and Listening



on Lesson 1 SB page 34



I am Ziad and this is a picture[1] of my classroom. We often use tablets in school. There are two laptop[2] computers in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse[3]. I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know ? And there's a printer[4], too. My friend, Omar, is printing his homework. I have got a mobile phone[5] but it's in my bag - we don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got a phone on his desk. He's charging[6] his phone with a phone charger[7]. And he's got a new MP3 player, it's small and blue. Can you see it ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) صورة | (2) كمبيوتر محمول | (3) فأرة الكمبيوتر | (4) طابعة | (5) تليفون محمول | (6) يشحن | (7) شاحن



on Lesson 1 SB page 35







There's a laptop computer on the table. Under the table, there's a printer. There isn't an MP3 player but there are two mobile phones near the laptop. The laptop has got a mouse.



on Lesson 2 SB page 36

Adam : Hi, Granddad. It's Adam. What are you doing ?
Granddad : I'm playing chess online[1]. I'm winning at the moment !
Adam : Are you using your new laptop ?
Granddad : Yes, it's quite easy to use[2]. What are you doing ?
Adam : I'm doing my computer studies homework[3]. I'm looking at websites[4] for information[5] about 3D printers[6].
Granddad : What are your mum and Alia doing ?
Adam : They're taking selfies[7]. I'm sending you one of their photos now.
Granddad : Oh yes ! That's a great photo.

Check Vocabulary

(1) متصل بالإنترنت	(2) سهل الاستخدام	(3) يؤدى واجب مادة الحاسب الآلى	(4) مواقع على الإنترنت
(5) معلومات	(6) طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	(7) يلتقط صور بالكاميرا الأمامية	

Videoscript Lesson 2 SB page 36

Narrator : We use technology every day. Modern technology[1] is very different from technology in the past. The ancient Egyptians[2] used their own forms[3] of technology to do a lot of different things. For example, ancient Egypt was the first civilization[4] to use calendars[5]. This is a calendar in the Temple of Karnak[6] in Luxor. Today, we can use our phones to find our way. The ancient Egyptians used astronomy[7] to find their way in the desert and at sea. Astronomy is the study of stars and planets. How do you tell the time ? Have you got a phone ... or a watch ? The ancient Egyptians had the first clocks. They were called sundials[8], like this one in Alexandria.

Check Vocabulary

(1) التكنولوجيا الحديثة	(2) قدماء المصريين	(3) أشكال	(4) حضارة	(5) تقويم	(6) معبد الكرنك	(7) علم الفلك	(8) ساعة شمسية

They used the sun to tell the time. Hieroglyphics[9] is the oldest writing in the world. The ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphics to communicate[10].

And of course, the ancient Egyptians used a plant[11] called papyrus[12] to make the first kind of paper.

This is papyrus. It grows[13] along the River Nile. Today, we use different technology to the ancient Egyptians. This woman is writing a text message on her phone. And this man is writing a story. He is not using paper at all !

Today, we have calendars on our phones, computers and tablets. Today's technology is different, but we can thank the ancient Egyptians for starting the ideas[14] for our technology too.

Check Vocabulary

• أفكار (14) | ينمو (13) | نبات البردى (12) | نبات (11) | يتواصل (10) | اللغة الهيروغليفية (9)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 tap / click

* **tap** — يلمس برفق على سطح شاشة محدثًا صوت أحيانًا [ينقر باللمس]

ex.: - Leen tapped on her mobile screen to make a call.

* **click** — يضغط على زر في فأرة أو لوحة مفاتيح.

ex.: - He clicked on the file icon to open it.

2 the same / similar

* **the same** — نفس الشيء «دون اختلاف كبير»

ex.: - He has the same features of his father.

* **similar (to)** — متشابه في بعض الصفات

ex.: - Amr is similar to Ali in some points.

3 Each — يستخدم بعدها اسم مفرد وتعني (كل على حدة)

ex.: - Each laptop has got a mouse.

4 Online — متصل بالإنترنت

ex.: - There are many online shops on the internet. — تستخدم كصفة قبل الاسم

- Grandfather is playing chess online. — تستخدم كظرف بعد الفعل

5 look

* look at — ينظر إلى

ex.:- I'm looking at websites for information about 3D printers.

* look for — يبحث عن

ex.:- She is looking for a new pair of shoes.

* look after — يعتني بـ

ex.:- I look after my baby sister while mother is out.

* look up — يبحث عن معلومة أو كلمة فى قاموس

ex.:- I use my dictionary to look up new words.

* look out for — يحذر من

ex.:- Divers should look out for dangerous sharks.

6 a mouse – mouses – mice

* a mouse — فأر - فأرة (الكمبيوتر)

ex.:- There is a mouse in the attic.
- My laptop has got a mouse.

* mouses — جمع كلمة **mouse** عندما نقصد فأرات الكمبيوتر

ex.:- I have two mouses for my computer.

* mice — فئران (جمع غير منتظم)

ex.:- There are two mice in the kitchen.

Important expressions & prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make chess pieces	يصنع قطع الشطرنج	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية
charge ... with	يشحن ... باستخدام	make a video call	يجرى مكالمة فيديو
play ... online	يلعب ... متصلاً بالإنترنت	send a text message	يرسل رسالة نصية
at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة	do computer studies homework	يؤدى واجب مادة الحاسب الآلى
easy to use	سهل الاستخدام		
design an icon for	يُصمم أيقونة لـ		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. A machine that can play music is called a / an ....
   a. MP3 player b. printer c. watch d. clock
2. If you want to increase the battery of your mobile with electricity, you can use a ....
   a. marker b. printer c. charger d. mouse
3. You can use the .... to click on different icons on the computer.
   a. mouse b. printer c. charger d. tablet
4. Our teacher asked us to write letters on the .... using markers.
   a. skateboard b. whiteboard c. board game d. blackboard
5. A .... is a photo you take of yourself.
   a. selfie b. portrait c. picture d. drawing

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. WB She's .... you a photo now. *(امتحان مجمع بنى سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢١)*
   a. writing b. sending c. doing d. making
7. SB I enjoy playing .... online. *(South Giza 2020)*
   a. chips b. chance c. cheese d. chess
8. WB .... on the icon on your laptop. *(El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)*
   a. Click b. Write c. Give d. Turn
9. WB I'd like to .... a selfie in front of the river.
   a. make b. give c. pick d. take

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. In 1992 , a computer engineer sent the world's first .... message.
    a. test b. taxes c. text d. toast
11. When the battery of the mobile is low, you can .... it.
    a. play b. break c. charge d. drive

12. When you want to send someone a message on a computer, send a / an ....
 a. letter b. email c. paragraph d. story

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. If you want to call someone and see him live مباشر, you can .... a video call.
 a. put b. make c. give d. take

14. I'm .... my computer studies homework now.
 a. making b. giving c. doing d. taking

15. I'm looking at websites .... information about 3D printers.
 a. at b. about c. for d. with

III Language

There is يوجد (للمفرد) **There are** يوجد (للجمع)

Affirmative Statements
الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

There is + **singular noun**
اسم مفرد (يعد / لا يعد)

ex. There is a printer.

There are + **plural noun**
اسم جمع

ex. There are two laptops.

Negative statements
الجمل الخبرية المنفية

There is not (isn't)

ex. There isn't a charger.

There are not (aren't)

ex. There aren't any tablets.



ex. Is there an MP3 player ?
- Yes, there is.
- No, there isn't.

ex. Are there any mobile phones ?
- Yes, there are.
- No, there aren't.

Note the following :

لاحظ أن :

- تستخدم فى الجمل الخبرية المثبتة — **some** بعض + اسم لا يعد/ اسم جمع

There is some milk in the bottle.
There are some pencils in my pencil case.

- تستخدم أيضًا some عند التعبير عن العرض والطلب

- Would you like some coffee ? (عرض)
- Can I have some tea ? (طلب)

- تستخدم فى الجمل الخبرية المنفية وصيغة الاستفهام بمعنى هل — **any** أى + اسم لا يعد/ اسم جمع

There isn't any ink in my pen.
There aren't any cakes in the fridge.
Is there any ink in your pen ?
Are there any cakes in the fridge ?

- تستخدم (an) قبل كلمة MP3 player وليس (a) لأنها تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

Is there an MP3 player ? *(SB page 35)*

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. .... there any water in the fridge ? *(El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)*
   a. Are b. Does c. Aren't d. Is

2. There .... a lot of milk in the fridge. *(Nasser-Beni Suef 2020)*
a. are b. weren't c. aren't d. is

3. There .... any meat in the dish. *(Rafah-North Sinai 2020)*
a. aren't b. is c. isn't d. are

4. SB There .... any tablets.
a. is b. are c. aren't d. isn't

5. SB There are some laptops and there .... a whiteboard.
a. are b. aren't c. do d. is

6. WB Are there .... printers ? *(امتحان مجمع الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق)*
a. some b. any c. much d. little

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. There .... more women than men in the office.
a. is b. isn't c. are d. am

8. Is there an umbrella for me ? - No, there ....
a. aren't b. is c. are d. isn't

9. .... there any pens with you, Mona ?
a. Is b. Are c. Do d. was

10. There are .... books in my bag.
a. any b. much c. some d. little

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. There <u>are</u> any books on the shelf. *(Hehia-Sharkia 2020)* (...........)
2. WB Is there a teacher ? – Yes, there <u>are</u>. (...........)
3. WB There aren't <u>some</u> computers. *(Wasat Alex 2020)* (...........)
4. SB There <u>aren't</u> a charger. (...........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Are <u>their</u> any mobile phones ? (...........)
6. <u>Is</u> there any computers in the classroom ? (...........)

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

معاك
MazakApp
شاهد وتعلم

Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتـة				
I	+	am	+	المصدر .inf + ing
He / She / It / فاعل مفرد غائب		is		
We / You / They / فاعل جمع		are		

ex. - I'm watching TV now.
- Look! They are playing tennis.
- He's studying for his exams at the moment.

Usage الاستخدام

◂ يعبر هذا الزمن عن حدث يقع أثناء التحدث (لحظة الكلام).

ex.: - They are designing a new library now.
- He is reading a book at present.

◂ يستخدم هذا الزمن أيضًا لوصف أحداث مخطط لها في المستقبل.

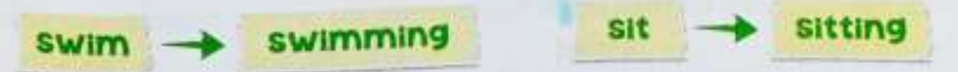
ex.: - We are going to Aswan tomorrow.
- They are having a party tonight.

ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل

◂ عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف الـ (e) غير منطوق (قبلة حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) أما إذا كان حرف (e) منطوقًا لا تحذف ويضاف (ing).



◂ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد)



لاحظ أنه لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير إذا كان الفعل ينتهى بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرفين متحركين.

feed → feeding   wait → waiting

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ie) تحول إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing).

lie → lying   die → dying

كلمات دالة (Key words) : غالبًا تأتى مع الزمن :

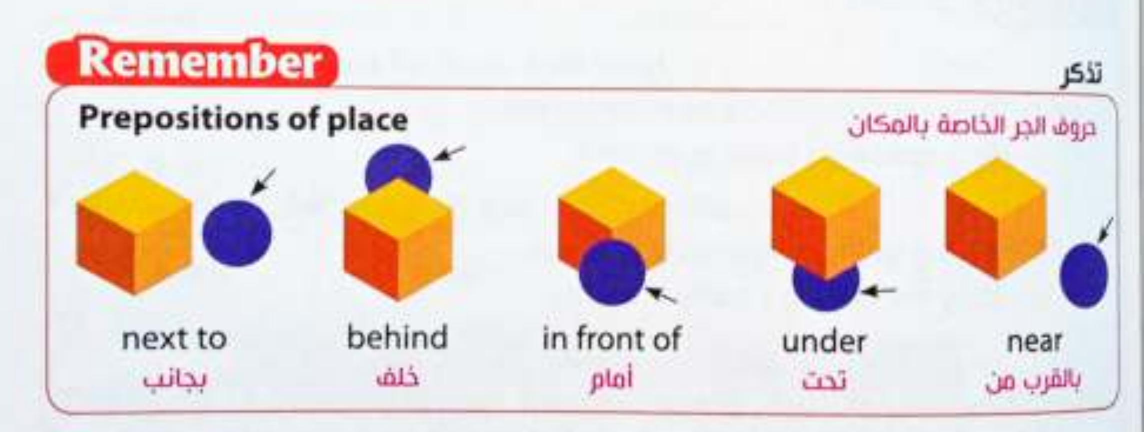
now	الآن	Take care !	احذر !	at the moment	فى تلك اللحظة
Look !	انظر !	still	مازال	at present	فى الوقت الحاضر
Listen !	انصت !	tonight	فى هذه الليلة	Look out ! / Watch out !	احترس !

ex.: - Listen! She's singing.
- He is working now.

Remember

تذكر

Prepositions of place — حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. My friend and I .... chess now. *(Rasheed - Beheira 2020)*
   a. are playing b. am playing c. played d. plays
2. Ali .... his English book now. *(Quesna - Menofia 2020)*
   a. reads b. read c. is reading d. reading

3. WB Mum and my sister .... a cake.
   a. making b. are making c. is making d. makes
4. SB I am .... you a photo.
   a. sent b. sends c. send d. sending
5. SB I'm playing chess online. I'm .... at the moment.
   (امتحان مجمع الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢١)
   a. win b. wins c. winning d. won

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. The dog is .... the tree. I can't see its head.
   a. next b. under c. behind d. front of
7. They .... taking selfies now.
   a. is b. was c. am d. are
8. Look ! Youssef is .... the ball.
   a. kicking b. kicks c. kick d. kicked
9. My uncle's house is in .... of my house.
   a. next b. front c. back d. behind
10. Watch out ! A car ....
   a. comes b. coming c. came d. is coming

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. My father <u>sleeps</u> at the moment. *(North Giza 2020)* (............)
2. WB There is an MP3 player <u>behind</u> to the laptop. (............)
3. Omar <u>prints</u> his homework now. *(Aswan 2020)* (............)
4. SB He is <u>charged</u> his phone with a phone charger. (............)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. They <u>is</u> making chess pieces. (............)
6. I <u>drink</u> tea at the moment. (............)
7. The whiteboard is next <u>up</u> the students' desks. (............)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 1 SB page 34 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٧١ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   - **Using technology at classroom.**

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. Who is printing his homework ?
   - ....

- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

3. What does the pronoun "**He**" in the text refer to ?
   - ....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. We often use tablets in schools. ١. غالبًا ما نستخدم الكمبيوتر اللوحى فى المدارس.
2. I use the printer to print my homework. ٢. استخدم الطابعة فى طباعة واجبى المنزلى.
3. I look at websites for information. ٣. أبحث عن المعلومات على الإنترنت.
4. My father likes playing chess online. ٤. أبى يحب لعب الشطرنج عبر الإنترنت.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

any - next - taking - is - some - are

1. There .... a printer.
2. There aren't .... mobile phones.
3. She's .... a selfie at the moment.
4. The tablet is .... to the printer.
5. There are .... desks.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Using technology"

....

....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about your classroom

السؤال والإجابة عن محتويات حجرة الدراسة

- What's in your classroom ? - ما الموجود داخل فصلك الدراسى ؟
- There are some laptops and a whiteboard. - يوجد بعض أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمولة وسبورة بيضاء.
- There aren't any tablets. - لا يوجد أى أجهزة لوحية.



General Exercises  LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where is Ziad ? - He is in his ....
   a. playground b. classroom c. car d. homework
2. How many laptops are there in the classroom ?
   a. 3 b. 4 c. 2 d. 5
3. There is one .... in the classroom .
   a. laptop b. MP3 player c. tablet d. printer
4. Who is printing his homework ?
   a. Omar b. Ziad c. Tarek d. Ali

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is busy using his mobile.

Marwa : I see you are busy.

Ali : Yes, I am very busy.

Marwa : What are you (1) .... ?

Ali : I am using my (2) ....

Marwa : Why ?

Ali : To (3) .... an email.

Marwa : Is your mobile new ?

Ali : Yes, it is.

Marwa : Can you (4) .... a selfie ?

Ali : Yes, I will send you one of my (5) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB There aren't .... pencil cases with him.
   a. some b. any c. no d. nobody
2. I bought a new .... that can play music easily.
   a. printer b. charger c. MP3 player d. mouse

3. Ayman is .... his laptop in his office now.
   a. use b. uses c. using d. used
4. What game are you playing .... ?
   a. line b. online c. in line d. at line
5. A/ An .... is a small picture on a computer screen.
   a. icon b. item c. bit d. mouse
6. Can you .... what these words mean?
   a. guess b. take c. make d. use
7. They .... writing a new story at the moment.
   a. are b. is c. isn't d. have
8. If you want to leave a game on the computer, ... twice on the mouse.
   a. trick b. click c. lick d. hit
9. A : Is the boy .... his homework at the moment ?
   B Yes, he is.
   a. printing b. charging c. using d. making
10. A .... message is a message which someone writes on a phone.
   a. video b. text c. audio d. life

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Are** there any useful information on the website ? (............)
2. WB **Is** there any tablets ? (............)
3. SB Are there **some** mobile phones ? (............)
4. I'm **look** at websites on the internet. (............)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

إجابات تجدها في نهاية الكتاب

"Technology"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 38 : 40 WB pages 97 & 98



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

school uniform (n)	زى مدرسى موحد	wave (d) (v)	يلوح بيده
conversation (n)	محادثة	nature (n)	الطبيعة
insects (n)	حشرات	eagle (n)	نسر
put up (phrv)	يرفع	mime (d) (v)	يقلد / يومئ
action (n)	حدث / فعل	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 97

email (n)	رسالة بريد إلكترونى	sunny (adj)	مشمس
smile (d) (v), (n)	يبتسم / ابتسامة	programme (n)	برنامج

Lesson 4

SB page 40 WB page 98

spelling (n)	الهجاء	advice (n)	نصيحة
lunchtime (n)	وقت الغذاء	kind (n)	نوع
around (prep)	حول	grammar mistakes (n)	أخطاء القواعد اللغوية

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
spend	يقضى / ينفق	spent	spent
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
similar (to)	مشابه (لـ)	different (from)	مختلف (عن)
send	يرسل	receive	يستقبل

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

eagle	a large bird that can fly high and see very well	نسر
nature	the plants, animals, land, sea, etc. around us	الطبيعة

II Listening and Reading







on Lesson 3 SB page 38

Listen to the conversation between two sisters. What is Randa doing ?

Randa : Hi, Sherifa, it's Randa.

Sherifa : Oh, hello Randa. Where are you ? Are you at home ?

Randa : Yes, and Uncle Yasser's here with our cousins Ola, Reem and Samira.

Sherifa : What's Mum doing ?

Randa : She's looking at a website[1]. She wants to make a cake[2].

Sherifa : Yum! Mum makes the best cakes. Is she using the tablet ?

Randa : No, she isn't. She's using the laptop. Uncle Yasser's using the tablet. He's writing an email.

Sherifa : Is grandmother watching TV ?

Randa : Yes, she is. It's her favourite programme on now.

Sherifa : Of course. What are Ola and Samira doing ?

Randa : They're taking selfies in the garden.

Sherifa : Again ? They're always taking selfies !

Check Vocabulary

(1) موقع على الإنترنت | (2) يصنع كيكة / تورتة

Randa : I know. Reem isn't taking a selfie; she's listening to music on her MP3 player.

Sherifa : She's a good dancer[3]! What are you doing, Randa ?

Randa : I'm talking to[4] you !

Sherifa : Oh yes !

Check Vocabulary

راقصة (3)	يتحدث إلى (4)



on Lesson 3 SB page 39



Soha is not making a video call[1] but she is talking to her friend. Amira is not using any technology[2].

Fatma has got long, curly hair[3]. She is writing. Hala is using her mobile phone[4] to send a text message. Leila is not using a mobile phone. She is using a tablet. Mona is smiling at her phone ! She is taking a selfie[5].

Check Vocabulary

يجرى مكالمة فيديو (1)	تكنولوجيا (2)	شعر مجعد (3)	هاتف محمول (4)	يلتقط صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية للهاتف (5)

on Lesson 4 SB page 40



I love technology[1] ! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop[2], but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

Can you guess[3] my favourite[4] lesson at school ? Yes, it is computer studies! At break and lunchtime[5] I stay in the classroom and I look at video game[6] websites on my phone.

Wael, age 12

Check Vocabulary

تكنولوجيا (1)	كمبيوتر محمول (2)	يخمن (3)	مفضل (4)	وقت الغذاء (5)	لعبة فيديو (6)

on Lesson 4 SB page 40



I love nature [1]. I like walking and watching the trees, animals [2], flowers and insects [3] all around us.

I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden [4] and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside [5] at break. I go when it's very hot or cold!

I've got a mobile phone. I don't send text messages or make video calls on my phone, but I take photos of flowers.

Mazin, age 13

Check Vocabulary

(1) طبيعة	(2) حيوانات	(3) حشرات	(4) حديقة	(5) بالخارج

on Lesson 4 WB page 98



In this picture, there is a big park. There are lots of flowers and insects and there is a big tree. A girl is sitting under the tree. Her mother is taking a photo of her. Her father is not sitting under the tree. He is flying a kite ! The girl's brothers are playing tennis.

Listening



on Lesson 3 WB page 97



Judy : Hi, Leila. Where are you ?
Leila : Hi, Judy. I'm in the park with my family.
Judy : What are you doing there ?
Leila : I'm sitting under a tree. It's very sunny.
Judy : Are your brothers sitting, too ?
Leila : No, they aren't. They're playing football.
Judy : Is your dad playing football with them ?
Leila : No, he isn't. He's not here. He's working today. But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!

Judy : What's your mother doing ?
Leila : Er, wait ... here she is. She's bringing me a drink of water. Thanks, Mum!

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 spend

* spend + ... وقت + (inf. + ing) — بمعنى يقضى وقت
ex.: I spend the morning reading a story.
* spend + ... مال on (noun اسم / inf. + ing) — بمعنى ينفق مالًا على
ex.: I spend my pocket money مصروف جيب on sweets.

2 kind

* kind (n) — نوع
ex.: You can see lots of different kinds of birds in the park.
* kind (adj) — طيب / عطوف
ex.: Mr Ahmed is a kind person.

3 There / Their

* There is/are ... — يوجد
ex.: - There is a girl in the playground.
* there — هناك
ex.: - Who is over there ?
* Their — صفة ملكية من الضمير They
ex.: - Their father is a gymnast.

4 What do you think of .... ? — تستخدم للسؤال عن الرأى

ex.: - What do you think of Wael and Mazin ?

5 break

* break – broke – broken (v) — يكسر
ex.: - Don't break your pencil.
* break (n) — فسحة
ex.: - At break, we play video games. (لاحظ أنه يسبقها حرف الجر at)

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expression	Arabic	Expression	Arabic
write ..... with	يكتب ... باستخدام	aged 13	عمره ١٣ عام
make questions	يكون أسئلة	do a hobby	يمارس هواية
put my hand up	ارفع يدى	near my house	بالقرب من منزلى
have to + inf.	يضطر إلى	take notes	يدون ملاحظات
take photos of	يلتقط صور لـ	on my laptop / on my mobile phone	على الكمبيوتر المحمول (الخاص بى) / على هاتفى
fly a kite	يطير طائرة ورقية	sit under the tree	يجلس تحت الشجرة
wear black shoes	يرتدى حذاء أسود	smile at	يبتسم لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. It's polite to .... your hands up first when you want to ask a question.
 a. make b. give c. put d. take
2. We .... to our friends through the window to say goodbye.
 a. gave b. called c. waved d. moved
3. A/ An .... is a large bird that can fly high and see very well.
 a. canary b. duck c. eagle d. hen
4. .... means the plants, animals, land, sea, etc. around us.
 a. Nature b. Plant c. Information d. Place

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. Is it good to have a hobby you .... all the time ? *(Balteem-Kafr El Sheikh 2020)*
 a. make b. do c. give d. take
6. SB Soha isn't making a .... , but she is talking to her friend.
 (امتحان مجمع الغربية - غرب المحلة ٢٠٢١)
 a. project b. video call c. selfie d. message
7. WB He is .... a kite.
 a. eating b. sitting c. going d. flying
8. WB He's .... under the tree.
 a. flying b. sitting c. taking d. making

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

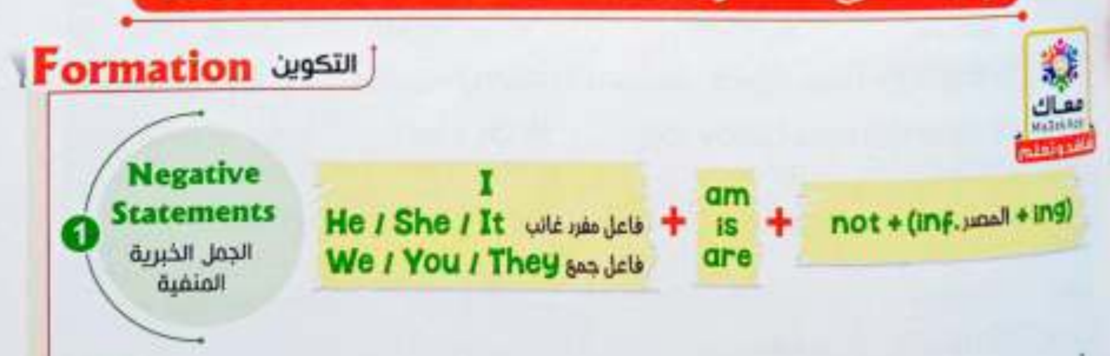
9. Life in the city is .... from life in the country.
   a. similar b. different c. easy d. important
10. Pupils should wear their school .... every school day.
   a. form b. books c. uniform d. playground
11. It is always .... in the summer.
   a. rainy b. sunny c. windy d. cold
12. What .... of stories do you like ?
   a. age b. height c. width d. kind

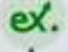
Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Please, ... me a drink of water.
   a. do b. make c. bring d. answer
14. SB Mona is .... at her phone ! She is taking a selfie.
   a. smelling b. smiling c. doing d. trying
15. The teacher taught us how to .... questions.
   a. take b. do c. make d. have
16. Soha is talking .... her phone at the moment.
   a. at b. on c. from d. in

III Language

The Present Continuous زمن المضارع المستمر





- She is not teaching at the moment.
- They are not studying now.

(a) Yes/No questions : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

Am / Is / Are + I / he / she / it / فاعل مفرد غائب / we / you / they / فاعل جمع + (inf. المصدر + ing) ......?

ex. Is she helping sick people at present ?
- Yes, she is.
- No, she isn't.

Are they growing potatoes now ?
- Yes, they are.
- No, they aren't.

2 Interrogative
صيغة الاستفهام

(b) Wh-questions : ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + (inf. المصدر + ing) ......?

ex. Where are you working now ?
- I'm working in Cairo.

What is she studying at the moment ?
- She is studying maths.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB What .... doing at the moment ?
   a. they are b. are they c. they were d. were they
2. WB She isn't .... at the hospital today.
   a. work b. working c. works d. worked

3. SB Is he .... an email ?
   a. write b. writes c. writing d. to write
4. WB What .... you doing ? (امتحان مجمع التبا - سالوط ٢٠٢١) (Belbis- Sharkia 2020)
   a. is b. are c. do d. was

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Is he .... glasses ?
   a. wear b. to wear c. wears d. wearing
6. Mera .... studying English now.
   a. doesn't b. don't c. aren't d. isn't
7. What are your mum and Alia .... at the moment ?
   a. do b. does c. did d. doing
8. Who is .... ? –Yasser.
   a. call b. called c. calling d. to call
9. .... Mona sweeping the floor now ?
   a. Are b. Is c. Does d. Do
10. .... Hany and his brother walking to school ?
   a. Are b. Is c. Do d. Isn't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB Are Ali's mother cooking lunch ? (............)
2. WB Do you wearing brown shoes ? (............)
3. Who are Ali sending a message to ? (Al-Agami-Alex 2020) (............)
4. Ahmed can't talk to you now because he does his homework. (Al-Amria-Alex 2020) (............)

El Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Mona's father are reading a book. (............)
6. Who are calling Ali on the phone ? (............)
7. She is still use her old mobile phone. (............)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حدة.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 40 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٨٨ ، ١٨٩ ثم قم بالتدرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

1. What do you think of Mazin's hobby ?
   I think it's interesting because I love nature, too.

- Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

2. What does the pronoun "I" in the text refer to ?
   - ....

- Extracting information استخراج معلومات

3. What does Mazin use his phone for ?
   - ....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. I love nature so much.
   ١. أنا أحب الطبيعة جدًا.
2. I like watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects.
   ٢. أنا أحب مشاهدة الأشجار والحيوانات والزهور والحشرات.
3. I like being in the garden and looking at the sky.
   ٣. أنا أحب البقاء فى الحديقة والنظر للسماء.
4. I like photos of flowers so much.
   ٤. أحب صور الزهور جدًا.

Master your Term

اتقن منهجك بالطريقة المناسبة لك.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

isn't - are - making - am - doing

1. I am .... a video call.
2. What .... you studying now ?
3. She .... writing an email.
4. Are you reading a story ? - Yes, I ....

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Nature"

....

....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Asking about what someone is doing now :

للسؤال عما يقوم به الشخص الآن :

Are + (you - they) + (inf. + ing) .... ?

Is + (he / she) + (inf. + ing) .... ?

Is Hala making a video call ?	- هل تجرى هالة مكالمة ڤيديو ؟
Is he waving ?	- هل هو يشاور / يلوح بيده ؟
Are you sitting next to your best friend ?	- هل تجلس بجوار صديقك المفضل؟
Are you wearing a school uniform ?	- هل ترتدى الزى المدرسى؟
Are you using a dictionary ?	- هل تستخدم القاموس؟

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ashraf is telling Ayman about his favourite place.

Ayman : What's your favourite place ?

Ashraf : It is the (1) .... near my house.

Ayman : What can you (2) .... in this park ?

Ashraf : I can see (3) .... of birds.

Ayman : What (4) .... would you like to see one day ?

Ashraf : An eagle.

Ayman : What else do you do there ?

Ashraf : I (5) .... my kite.

Ayman : Do you enjoy your time ?

Ashraf : Yes, of course.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Rokaya loves nature. She likes walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around her. She doesn't like staying at home, but she loves being in the garden. Her favourite place is the park near her house. She can see lots of different kinds of birds **there**. She has got a mobile phone. She takes lots of photos of flowers and birds, but she doesn't send text messages or make video calls. She **doesn't like** playing video games. Rokaya loves writing articles about nature.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. What does Rokaya use her mobile phone for ?

....

3. How do you know that Rokaya loves nature ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Rokaya doesn't make .... calls.
   a. audio b. video c. earphone d. message
5. The underlined word "**there**" refers to the ....
   a. birds b. home c. school d. park
6. The underlined verb "**doesn't like**" means ....
   a. enjoys b. hates c. loves d. prefers

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I'd like to .... all day playing video games.
   a. send b. spend c. put d. see
2. Parrots and .... are beautiful birds.
   a. elephants b. rats c. monkeys d. eagles
3. When you leave someone, you can .... goodbye to him.
   a. put b. take c. wave d. get
4. Sara and Mohamed .... putting their hands up to answer the question.
   a. is b. was c. are d. am
5. I usually play video games on my ....
   a. book b. laptop c. mouse d. TV
6. Ants are kinds of ....
   a. plants b. insects c. birds d. whales
7. A : What do you .... of this book ? - B : It's wonderful.
   a. sink b. think c. give d. bring
8. I .... chess online at the moment.
   a. plays b. playing c. am playing d. to play
9. What .... can you give to your friends ?
   a. advice b. nature c. lunchtime d. mistake
10. Are you .... a selfie with your mobile ?
   a. to take b. take c. taking d. took

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Listen! Hassan is **talks** to his father. (........)
2. Are you **listen** to music ? (........)
3. **Does** she flying the kite ? (........)
4. They are **make** a video call. (........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Which do you like more, nature or technology ?"

....

....

....

....

....

LESSONS **5 & 6**

SB pages 41 & 42 WB pages 99 & 100



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

drink (n)	مشروب	poster (n)	ملصق
world (n)	العالم	boil (ed) (v)	يغلى
font (n)	خط	drop (ped) (v)	يسقط
colourful (adj)	ملون	kettle (n)	غلاية (كهربائية)
popular (adj)	شائع / مشهور	SEND icon (n)	أيقونة الإرسال
instructions (n)	تعليمات	subheading (n)	عنوان فرعى
heading (n)	عنوان فرعى	password (n)	كلمة السر

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 41 WB page 99

sugar (n)	سكر	message icon (n)	أيقونة الرسائل
imperative (n)	صيغة الأمر	without (prep)	بدون

Lesson 6

SB page 42 WB page 100

secret (adj) (n)	سرى / سر	tea bag (n)	كيس شاى
personal (adj)	شخصى	worried (adj)	قلق

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
send	يرسل	sent	sent
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

boil	if you boil water, it is very hot and bubbles	يغلى
kettle	a machine in the kitchen that makes water hot	غلاية (كهربية)

turn on	start a machine	يشغل (جهاز) أو آلة
secret	something that only you or a few people know	سر
technology	computers and mobile phones are examples of this	تكنولوجيا
password	• a special word or letters that you write before you can use a computer or website • A word or numbers you use to go onto a website	كلمة سر

II Reading and Listening



• on Lesson 5 SB page 41

1. **How to send a text message[1]:**

First, tap[2] the messages icon. Tap the name of the person[3]. Write your text message. Then tap the SEND icon[4]

a. 4


b. 2


c. 1


d. 3


2. How to make a video call :
   - Turn your tablet on[5].
   - Tap the name of the person.
   - Say Hello!

Check Vocabulary

(1) رسالة نصية	(2) ينقر	(3) شخص	(4) أيقونة إرسال	(5) يشغل جهاز

3. How to make a cup of tea :

- First, put some water in a kettle[6]. Boil[7] the water. Put the hot water in a cup with a tea bag. Take out the tea bag. Then, drink the tea.



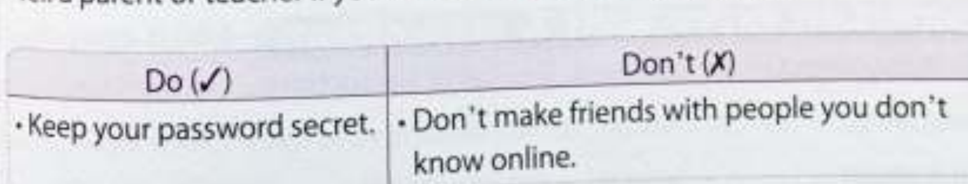
Check Vocabulary

(6) غلاية كهربية | (7) يغلي

on Lesson 6 SB page 42

Stay safe when you use technology

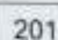
- Keep your password[1] secret[2].
- Don't make friends with people you don't know online[3].
- Don't tell people your personal information[4] (e.g. telephone number).
- Don't send photos to people you don't know.
- Ask for help from a parent[5] or teacher.
- Don't answer a phone call or video call[6] from someone you don't know.
- Tell a parent or teacher if you are worried about[7] something.



Do (✓)	Don't (✗)
• Keep your password secret.	• Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

Check Vocabulary

(1) كلمة السر | (2) سر | (3) متصل بالإنترنت | (4) معلومات شخصية | (5) أحد الوالدين | (6) مكالمة فيديو | (7) قلق بشأن



• on Lesson 5 WB page 99

Mum : Come here, please Ali.
Ali : Yes, Mum. What is it ?
Mum : Stop playing on your phone and listen to me. I need you to do something.
Ali : Yes, OK. What do you want me to do ?
Mum : Please go to the shop, buy some sugar, take it to your grandmother's house, help her make a cake and then send me a text message when you want to come home.



General Notes on Reading and Listening

▶ **safe / save**

* safe (adj) آمن

ex.: - SB To stay safe online, keep your password secret.

* save (d) (v) ينقذ - يوفر / يدخر

ex.: - The man saved the child from drowning (الغرق).
- He saves a lot of money to buy a bike.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

put in the correct order	ضع فى الترتيب الصحيح	give instructions	يعطى تعليمات
make a cup of tea	يُعد كوب من الشاى	tap the send Icon	ينقر على أيقونة الإرسال
think about	يفكر فى (موضوع)	say hello!	قل مرحبًا !
the rest of	الباقى من	agree with	يتفق مع
stay safe	يبقى آمنًا	make friends with	يكون صداقات مع
keep ... password secret	يحافظ على سرية كلمة السر	go onto a website	يدخل على موقع إلكترونى
		go online	يتصل بالإنترنت

look interesting	يبدو رائع / شيق	worried about	قلق بشأن
ask for help	يطلب مساعدة	easy to read	سهل القراءة
answer a phone call from	يرد على مكالمة تليفونية من	take out	يُخرج
		make a poster	يصمم ملصقاً

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. I used the electric .... to make a cup of tea.
   a. cattle　b. kettle　c. battle　d. beetle
2. It's important to keep your .... secret on the internet.
   a. passport　b. dress　c. password　d. school
3. You should follow your teacher's .... inside the classroom.
   a. rooms　b. instructions　c. shops　d. meals
4. If you .... water, it becomes hot.
   a. boil　b. dry　c. try　d. fry
5. You shouldn't .... litter in the park.
   a. drop　b. fall　c. follow　d. ride

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. SB Don't tell people you don't know your telephone number or your .... information. (امتحان مجمع شمال سيناء - رفح ٢٠٢١)
   a. personal　b. sunny　c. worried　d. colourful
7. SB Tell your parents or a teacher if you are worried .... something on the internet.
   a. in　b. of　c. about　d. to
8. WB .... safe online is very important. *(Nasser-Beni Suef 2020)*
   a. Staying　b. Doing　c. Making　d. Saying
9. SB Don't .... a phone call or video call from someone you don't know.
   a. take　b. answer　c. ask　d. write

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. You shouldn't .... friends with bad people.
a. do b. make c. deal d. give

11. You should .... your password and personal information a secret.
a. tell b. keep c. say d. deal

12. Our teacher .... us instructions on how to use the tablet.
a. gave b. played c. asked d. followed

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. How can you .... your poster easy to read ?
a. take b. make c. break d. give

14. It's dangerous to .... photos to people you don't know.
a. search b. make c. send d. draw

15. If you have a problem, you can .... your parents or teacher for help.
a. ask b. answer c. boil d. read

16. When I meet my friends, I .... hello.
a. make b. tell c. say d. buy

III Language

Imperative صيغة الأمر

Imperative
صيغة الأمر

الأمر المثبت
Inf مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة

ex. - Keep your password secret.
- Close the window.
- Sit down.

الامر المنفى
Don't + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. - Don't make noise.
- Don't play in the street.
- Don't go out.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB To make a video call, ... on your tablet. (امتحان مجمع البحوث - رشيد ٢٠٢١)
   a. tap b. taps c. tapping d. tapped
2. SB .... for help from a parent or a teacher. (Baltim Kafr El Sheikh 2020)
   a. Asking b. Asked c. Ask d. Asks
3. SB .... make friends with people you don't know online.
   a. Didn't b. Do c. Doesn't d. Don't
4. SB Don't .... photos to people you don't know.
   a. sent b. sending c. send d. sends
5. .... tell people online your telephone number. (El Maragha - Souhag 2020)
   a. Didn't b. Doesn't c. Does d. Don't

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. Don't .... food that is unhealthy.
   a. eats b. eat c. eating d. ate
7. Don't go out now. .... here.
   a. Waiting b. Wait c. Waits d. Waited
8. Don't .... the road here. It's dangerous.
   a. crosses b. crossing c. cross d. to cross
9. .... quiet when your father is asleep.
   a. Keep b. To keep c. Keeping d. Kept
10. .... your laptop to make a poster.
   a. Used b. Use c. Using d. Uses

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. Didn't waste your time playing games. (Rafah - North Sinai 2020) (.........)
2. First, putting some water in a kettle. (Ain Shams - Cairo 2020) (.........)
3. WB Doesn't tell people your personal information. (Nasser-Beni Suef 2020) (.........)
4. SB Keeps your password secret. (East Tanta - Gharbia 2020) (.........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. **Went** to the ticket office to buy another ticket. (.........)
6. It is hot. **Opening** the window, please. (.........)
7. Don't **drank** water from the canal. (.........)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 42 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٠١ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقًا لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What's the main idea of the passage ?

- ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context**

تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص

2. The opposite of the word "**safe**" is ....
   a. false b. dangerous c. different d. personal

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

3. Keep your .... secret.
   a. technology b. food c. password d. language

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. Always keep your password secret.
١. احتفظ دائمًا بكلمة السر الخاصة بك.
2. Don't make friends with people you don't know.
٢. لا تكون صداقات مع أشخاص لا تعرفهم.
3. Don't tell people about your personal information.
٣. لا تخبر الناس عن معلوماتك الشخصية.
4. Tell your parents or teachers about anything wrong.
٤. أخبر والديك أو معلميك عن أى شىء خطأ.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

tap - Don't - Ask - answer - Do

1. .... make friends with people you don't know online.
2. .... for help if you are worried about something.
3. First, ... the message icon.
4. Don't .... any video calls from someone you don't know.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية

- **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :**

"How to keep safe online"

....

....

3. Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Giving instructions

إعطاء التعليمات

(١) يمكن استخدام (imperative) صيغة الأمر المثبت أو المنفى لإعطاء التعليمات.

- Keep your password secret.
- احتفظ بكلمة السر الخاصة بك.
- Don't make friends with people you don't know online.
- لا تصادق / تصاحب أشخاص لا تعرفهم على الإنترنت.
- Study your lessons.
- ذاكر دروسك.
- Don't make noise.
- لا تسبب ضوضاء.

(٢) كيفية إعطاء تعليمات بخطوات عمل كوب من الشاى :

- Put some water in a kettle.
- ضع بعضًا من الماء فى الغلاية.
- Boil the water well.
- اغلى الماء جيدًا.
- Add some sugar and tea.
- أضف بعضًا من السكر والشاى.
- Stir the cup well.
- قلب الكوب جيدًا.

General Exercises  LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ola is asking Mona about her mobile phone.

Ola : Do you have a mobile phone ?
Mona : Yes, (1) ....
Ola : (2) .... do you charge your mobile ?
Mona : With a (3) ....
Ola : Do you use your mobile to (4) .... selfies ?
Mona : Yes, I always take selfies with my friends.
Ola : Nice. How can you send a text message ?
Mona : I (5) .... on this icon to send messages.
Ola : It seems easy.
Mona : Yes, of course.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB First, ... some water in the kettle.
 a. putting b. put c. puts d. is putting
2. SB .... tell people online your telephone number.
 a. Didn't b. Doesn't c. Don't d. Does
3. To send a text message, first tap the .... icon.
 a. video b. online c. website d. message
4. SB It is important to stay .... online.
 a. safe b. save c. weak d. hot
5. Don't move now. .... here for me, please.
 a. Wait b. Waiting c. To wait d. Waited
6. Password is a word or numbers you .... to go onto a website.
 a. eat b. play c. use d. call
7. Computers and mobile phones are examples of ....
 a. technology b. electricity c. information d. phones
8. To make tea, first .... water well.
 a. taste b. boil c. give d. dry
9. .... on a machine means to start it.
 a. Feel b. Turn c. Give d. Fall
10. Famous or known means "............".
 a. lazy b. coward c. popular d. dry

3 Read the following, then answer the following :

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use **it** every day. We can send messages, do search and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions, First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g. telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a **parent** or a teacher.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What should you do when you are in trouble ?

....

2. What is the main idea of the passage ?

....

3. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. You should keep your .... secret.
   a. text b. email c. postcard d. password
5. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a. telephone b. instructions c. call d. technology
6. The underlined word "**parent**" means ....
   a. mum or dad b. uncle c. teacher d. mum's sister

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Doesn't** waste your time. (...........)
2. SB **Turns** your tablet on. (...........)
3. Don't **sends** photos to people you don't know. (...........)
4. First, **puts** some water in the kettle. (...........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite place"

....

....

....

....

....

Test on unit 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Soha loves ______ .
   a. video games b. break c. nature d. phone
2. She likes ______ the trees and animals.
   a. looking b. watching c. walking d. being
3. She ______ being in the garden.
   a. likes b. plays c. doesn't like d. works
4. She likes looking at the ______ .
   a. garden b. house c. sky d. zoo

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Eyad is asking Emad about technology in his classroom.

Eyad : What is in your classroom ?
Emad : There (1) ______ two laptops in our classroom.
Eyad : Do you use tablets in your classroom ?
Emad : Yes, we often (2) ______ them.
Eyad : What are you (3) ______ now ?
Emad : I'm (4) ______ for information on the internet.
Eyad : About what ?
Emad : About 3D printers.
Eyad : Can you use (5) ______ in your classroom ?
Emad : No, mobiles are not allowed in class.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My family members love technology. My brother Youssef is playing chess online. He is winning at the moment. I am doing my computer studies homework. I'm looking at websites for information about 3D

printers. My mum and sister, Sama are taking selfies. **They**'re sending one of their photos to my grandmother on her mobile phone. My dad is **sending** an email to my uncle in the USA. My uncle lives in New York. He is an electrical engineer in a company. He has got two daughters and a son called Tamer. Tamer is a student in the Faculty of Medicine.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the passage talk about ?

....

2. Is Youssef a winner or a loser ?

....

3. Do you think the internet is useful for the writer ? Why ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The opposite of the underlined word "**sending**" is ....

a. going b. receiving c. making d. doing

5. My uncle lives in the ....

a. UAE b. ARE c. USA d. KSA

6. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....

a. Youssef and Sama b. Sama and her mum
c. Tamer and Youssef d. Tamer and Sama

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB Are you .... a dictionary ?–Yes, of course.

a. doing b. using c. sitting d. running

2. Don't .... noise in the library.

a. do b. look c. take d. make

3. WB Write .... for how to make a cup of tea.

a. information b. messages c. icons d. instructions

4. WB .... your password secret.

a. Keep b. Keeps c. Kept d. Keeping

5. I am good at drawing ______ . This is my hobby.
   a. books   b. money   c. banks   d. pictures
6. At the moment, Ali ______ to music.
   a. listen   b. is listening   c. listening   d. listens
7. When you meet someone, ______ "Hello!".
   a. give   b. click   c. say   d. tap
8. ______ there any money with you ?
   a. Are   b. Is   c. Aren't   d. Am
9. How can you ______ your poster easy to read ?
   a. take   b. make   c. break   d. give
10. Are you wearing the school ______ ?
   a. uniform   b. university   c. bike   d. bus

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. She is **watches** a nice programme now. (______)
2. **Didn't** play in the street. It's dangerous. (______)
3. There **is** some books over there. (______)
4. **Are** there any water with you ? (______)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"How to keep safe online"

Quiz on units 1,2,3&4

اختبار تراكمى على الوحدات (١، ٢، ٣ و٤)

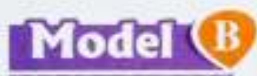
- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (B) or (A) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة فى الوحدات



Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She's wearing a red .... around her neck.
   a. sock b. ring c. scarf d. jacket
2. How .... does he play football ? - Always.
   a. many b. often c. long d. much
3. A .... is a photo you take of yourself.
   a. call b. board c. printer d. selfie
4. She .... at the moment.
   a. works b. worked c. is working d. work
5. You shouldn't tell people about your ....
   a. books b. houses c. subjects d. secrets



Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An .... is the top room in a house.
   a. office b. attic c. shop d. kitchen
2. The school .... should be followed in all schools.
   a. roles b. rulers c. rules d. rows
3. He .... score a lot of goals. He is very smart.
   a. can b. mustn't c. has d. able to
4. A baby bird is very .... It can't fly for a long time.
   a. strong b. ugly c. fast d. weak
5. .... for help if you are worried about anything.
   a. Ask b. Asks c. Asking d. Asked

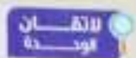
UNIT 5

Holidays

SB pages 44 : 53   WB pages 102:108

Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A description of a holiday; an advertisement for learning English
- **Writing :**
  An advertisement for a holiday; an email about a holiday
- **Listening :**
  A conversation about a holiday; a discussion about a day out
- **Speaking :**
  Describing a place; talking about a holiday; responding to news
- **Language :**
  The past simple
- **Values :**
  Respect
- **Issues :**
  Environmental awareness



- كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة اليومية والأبحاث في نهاية الكتاب.
- ملحق (Master your term).



- العلامة (SB) تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة (WB) تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.

LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 44 : 47 WB pages 102 & 103



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

jungle (n)	أدغال / غابة كثيفة	beach (n)	شاطئ
desert (n)	صحراء	sand (n)	رمل
activity (n)	نشاط	river (n)	نهر
tent (n)	خيمة	rock (n)	صخرة
cave (n)	كهف	sandcastle (n)	قلعة من الرمال
forest (n)	غابة	waterfall (n)	شلال

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1
SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 102

check (ed) (v)	يراجع	country (n)	دولة
number (ed) (v), (n)	يرقم - رقم	lake (n)	بحيرة
map (n)	خريطة	turn (ed) (v), (n)	يدور - دور

Lesson 2
SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 103

frightened (adj)	خائف / مرعوب	picnic (n)	نزهة خلوية
weather (n)	طقس	fantastic (adj)	رائع
hotel (n)	فندق	warm (adj)	دافئ

Famous places
أماكن مشهورة

Sahara Desert	صحراء صحارى (الصحراء الكبرى)	Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر
Djara cave	كهف الجارة	Morocco (n)	دولة المغرب
Siwa	واحة سيوة	Marrakesh (n)	مراكش (مدينة فى دولة المغرب)

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
write	يكتب	wrote	written
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
swim	يسبح	swam	swum

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
near	قريب	far	بعيد
go into	يدخل	go out	يخرج
delicious	لذيذ	terrible	فظيع

Study these definitions

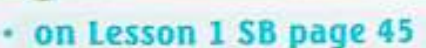
ادرس هذه التعريفات

beach	the area of sand or small stones in front of the sea	شاطئ
bike	a bicycle	دراجة
camel	a desert animal of Africa and Asia with a long neck	جمل
delicious	tasting very nice	لذيذ
desert	a very dry place where it does not often rain	صحراء
forest	a large area with lots of trees close together	غابة
game	an activity or competition that you play with one or more people	لعبة
lake	a large natural area of water, with land all around	بحيرة
mountain	a high area of land, higher than the land around it	جبل
jungle	a tropical forest with lots of plants and trees	أدغال
waterfall	the part of a river where the water falls down from a high place	شلال
cave	an opening in a large rock or mountain	كهف
picnic	a lunch that you prepare yourself to take on a trip and eat outside	نزهة (خلوية)

river	water that flows naturally from the mountains to the sea	نهر
sand	very small pieces of rock that you find next to a river or the sea	رمال
sandcastle	a building made of sand	قلعة من الرمال
sea	the salt water that covers a large part of the Earth	بحر
tent	something that you can sleep in when you go camping	خيمة

II Listening and Reading







Taha : Guess[1] where I am, Sara. I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees.

Sara : Are there monkeys in the trees ?

Taha : No. It's very dark[2] and quiet.

Sara : Are you in a forest[3] ?

Taha : Yes, I am!

Sara : My turn! I'm in a place with a lot of sand[4].

Taha : I know! You're in the desert[5].

Sara : No, I'm not. There isn't any water in the desert.
There's a lot of water in my place.



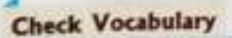
Taha : You're on the beach[6]!

Sara : That's right[7]!

Taha : Now, I'm in a dark place. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again.
Listen. (calls out with echo صدى الصوت) Hello ! (echo comes twice).

Sara : That's easy. You're in a cave ! Can you see any bats[8] ?

Taha : No, I can't. It's very dark in here !



(1) يخمن / يتوقع (2) مظلم (3) غابة (4) رمال (5) صحراء (6) شاطئ (7) هذا صحيح (8) خفافيش



on Lesson 2 SB page 46

My holiday photos

1. Last summer[1], when the weather[2] was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada. Mariam made this sandcastle[3]. There was a cave[4] in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was frightened[5]!





2. In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious[6] food. Then we played games and Ali rode his bike.





3. When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake[7], and climbed the mountain[8]. We saw camels and slept in a tent in the desert. It was my favourite holiday[9]!





Check Vocabulary

(1) فصل الصيف | (2) الطقس | (3) قلعة من الرمال | (4) كهف | (5) خائف | (6) لذيذ | (7) بحيرة | (8) جبل | (9) أجازة مفضلة

• on Lesson 2 WB page 103

Hi Eman,

Last summer, my family had a fantastic holiday in Morocco. We visited a big beach and then we slept in a nice hotel. We didn't swim in the sea. It wasn't very warm ! But I rode on a camel. That was fun. We visited a city called Marrakesh, too and we went to a museum. We also ate some delicious food.

Write soon.

Hana





General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 beach - coast

• beach شاطئ / بلاج (يصلح للمصيف والسباحة وقضاء أوقات ممتعة)

ex.: - Hurghada has beautiful beaches.

• coast ساحل بجوار البحر (قد يكون غير مؤهل للسباحة)

ex.: - Alexandria lies on the north coast of Egypt.

2 journey - trip - picnic

• journey رحلة طويلة

ex.: - The journey from Cairo to Aswan takes a long time.

• trip رحلة قصيرة

ex.: - I went on a trip to Alexandria for two days.

• picnic نزهة خلوية فى الهواء الطلق

ex.: - I had a picnic in Al-Azhar Park.

3 'd like to + inf. = would like to + inf. يريد أن

ex.: - I'd like to go to the beach.
- Where would you like to go ?

4 desert / dessert

• desert صحراء

ex.: -There are a lot of camels in the desert.

• dessert الحلو (بعد الوجبات)

ex.: -I like having ice cream for the dessert.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

frightened of	خائف من	have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة فى الهواء الطلق
swim in a lake	يسبح فى بحيرة	sleep in a tent	ينام فى خيمة
ride on a camel	يركب على جمل	make a sandcastle	يبنى قلعة من الرمال
go into a cave	يدخل كهف	climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. When the water of the river falls from a high place, it's called ....
   a. waterwheel   b. waterfall   c. lake   d. sea
2. A .... is a large hole inside a mountain.
   a. river   b. forest   c. cave   d. lake
3. We sleep in a .... in the desert.
   a. tin   b. flat   c. tent   d. lake
4. A .... is a very dry place where it does not often rain.
   a. dessert   b. desert   c. river   d. sea

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. WB " .... " are large areas with a lot of trees and bushes.
   a. Deserts   b. Rivers   c. Waterfalls   d. Forests
6. My family and I went to the beach and I .... a sandcastle. *(Nasser-Beni Suef 2020)*
   a. made   b. had   c. climbed   d. camped
7. Egypt, Libya and Lebanon are .... *(Qalyoubia 2020)*
   a. mountains   b. deserts   c. countries   d. rivers
8. .... are very strong. They can carry 200 kilos of bags. *(امتحان مجمع طنطا - الغربية ٢٠٢١)*
   a. Camels   b. Giraffes   c. Birds   d. Crocodiles
9. SB Sayed swam in the .... at Siwa.
   a. river   b. lake   c. mountain   d. cave

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. The .... Nile is the longest one in the world.
    a. River   b. Lake   c. Beach   d. Sea

11. This restaurant makes .... food. All people like it.
a. bad	b. delicious	c. unknown	d. sad

12. Egypt is the most important .... in Africa.
a. city	b. country	c. town	d. continent

13. In a cave, we can see ....
a. bats	b. seats	c. sweets	d. mountains

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. We had a .... in Al-Azhar Park in Cairo.
a. desert	b. tent	c. picnic	d. bike

15. I always feel frightened .... dangerous animals.
a. for	b. on	c. of	d. off

16. The train .... from Luxor to Cairo was tiring.
a. journey	b. picnic	c. tour	d. flight

III Language

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Formation التكوين





(a) Regular verbs : **(أ) الأفعال المنتظمة :**

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

لاحظ قواعد إضافة (d/ ed/ ied) للفعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

الفعل المنتهى بـ	يضاف له	Example مثـال
e (بعض الأفعال)	+ d	invite → invited
y + (حرف ساكن)	+ ied	carry → carried
y + (حرف متحرك)	+ ed	stay → stayed
(حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)	يضاعف الحرف الأخير + ed	stop → stopped
بعض الأفعال لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير بها	+ ed	visit → visited

(b) Irregular verbs :

(ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة مثل :

الفعل	الماضى	الفعل	الماضى
cut	cut	put	put
eat	ate	drink	drank
swim	swam	go	went
sleep	slept	ride	rode

لاحظ أن :

يتم استخدام (verb to be) فى زمن الماضى كالآتى :

I / He / She / It —فاعل مفرد→ was / wasn't

We / They / You —فاعل جمع→ were / weren't

ex. - Mariam was frightened of the cave.
- There were not (weren't) any cars on the beach.

فى حالة النفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject فاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

ex. - Rana didn't study her lessons yesterday.
- I didn't send an email to my friend last week.
- She didn't go to the beach.



- اختبار مصغر للأزهر الشريف.
- طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(a) Yes/No questions : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

في حالة الإستفهام باستخدام «هل» :

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ..... ?

ex. - Did you clean the car ?
- Yes, I did. -No, I didn't.

(b) Wh-questions : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

اما فى حالة الإستفهام باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Question word (كلمة الاستفهام) + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ..... ?

ex. - What did you study ?
- Where did she go ?

Key words كلمات دالة

in the past في الماضي
ago منذ
yesterday أمس
in + سنة ماضية (2000)



Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى زمن الماضى.

ex.: - Maha helped her mother with her work last night.
- She went to school two hours ago.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. What did you .... yesterday ? *(El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)*
a. gets b. got c. get d. getting

2. When I went to school, I .... good at English. *(El Saf-Giza 2020)*
   a. didn't b. don't c. can't d. wasn't
3. SB What did you .... for dinner last night ?
   a. eat b. ate c. eats d. eating
4. SB When I .... eight, we went to Siwa.
   a. am b. were c. is d. was
5. WB Where .... you go on holiday last year ? (امتحان مجمع بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢١)
   a. do b. did c. does d. done
6. SB Sayed and Mariam .... into the cave yesterday.
   a. go b. goes c. going d. went
7. Last summer, my family .... a nice holiday in Morocco. *(Ain Shams-Cairo 2020)*
   a. have b. having c. has d. had

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. Yesterday, we didn't .... our lessons.
   a. studied b. study c. studying d. studies
9. Mona .... a beautiful dress yesterday.
   a. wear b. wore c. wears d. wearing
10. My uncle .... a new car last year.
    a. buy b. bought c. buys d. buying
11. Who did you .... after school last Thursday ?
    a. see b. sees c. saw d. seeing
12. Mazen .... play well yesterday.
    a. didn't b. don't c. doesn't d. isn't
13. .... you have a good weekend last week ?
    a. Does b. Do c. Did d. Done
14. .... your friends ready for the exam last week ?
    a. Was b. Do c. Were d. Did
15. Salma worked very hard and .... very well in the exam.
    a. do b. does c. doing d. did
16. Last October, we .... my uncle and cousins in Cairo.
    a. visit b. visits c. visited d. visiting

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. What <u>do</u> you do yesterday ? *(West Zagazig-Sharkia 2020)* (...........)
2. WB There <u>wasn't</u> any cars on the beach. (...........)

3. SB They didn't travel by car. They **walk**. (.........)
4. Yara **play** tennis a week ago. (West Cairo 2020) (.........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Did you **bought** a new jacket ? (.........)
6. Yesterday, I **gives** Ibrahim a present. (.........)
7. My sister **has** a baby girl called Sara yesterday. (.........)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 46 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٢٣ ثم قم بالتدريب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What's the best title for the passage ?
   - **My holiday photos.**

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. What was there in the rocks ?
   - ....
3. Why didn't Mariam want to go into the cave ?
   - ....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

"My holidays"

1. I went to the beach last summer and made sandcastles on the beach.
   ١. ذهبت للشاطيء الصيف الماضى وقمت بعمل قلاع من الرمال على الشاطيء.
2. Last October, I visited my uncle in Cairo and I had a picnic.
   ٢. زرت عمى فى القاهرة فى أكتوبر الماضى وخرجت معه فى نزهة فى الهواء الطلق.
3. When I was eight, I visited Siwa and swam in the lake.
   ٣. عندما كنت فى الثامنة من عمرى، زرت واحة سيوة وسبحت فى البحيرة.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

was - Did - didn't - Last - Next

1. She .... study her lessons well.
2. .... you help your mother with the washing up ?
3. Hala .... afraid of the dog.
4. .... summer, I had a fantastic holiday.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite holiday"

....

....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

1. Asking and answering questions about places

السؤال والإجابة عن الأماكن

Questions 	Answers 
• Where would you like to go ? Why ? أين تود أن تذهب ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I'd like to go to the beach to enjoy swimming. أرغب فى الذهاب للشاطئ لأستمتع بالسباحة.
• What can you see there ? ما الذى يمكن أن تراه هناك ؟	- I can see pure water. أستطيع أن أرى مياه نقية.

2. Talking about a holiday

الحديث عن الإجازة

- I spent my holiday in + (مكان). — لقد قضيت أجازتى فى (مكان معين).
- I enjoyed (نشاط من الأنشطة). — لقد استمتعت بـ (نشاط معين).
- I like walking and playing in (وقت معين). — أحب المشى واللعب فى (وقت معين).

General Exercises



LESSONS 1 & 2



• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. We had a picnic at .... last week.
   a. the cinema b. Al Azhar Park c. the sea d. the jungle
2. We ate .... food.
   a. delicious b. terrible c. warm d. hot
3. Ali rode on a ....
   a. camel b. bike c. bus d. train
4. We played ....
   a. tennis b. football c. games d. handball

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Hassan about his holiday.

Ahmed : Where did you go on holiday ?

Hassan : I went to the (1) ....

Ahmed : What (2) .... you do on the beach ?

Hassan : I (3) .... in the sea and made a sandcastle.

Ahmed : When did you (4) .... back ?

Hassan : I came back on Friday.

Ahmed : Did you take any photos ?

Hassan : Yes. I (5) .... many photos.

Ahmed : Can I come with you the next time ?

Hassan : Certainly.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last summer, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach in Hurghada. Many tourists come to Hurghada as it has a lot of exciting places. It is a beach resort منتجع town. **It** has many tourist attractions. Its beaches are beautiful and wonderful. Speedboats قوارب سريعة give you the chance to enjoy the **sea** and to go fishing. The hotels are comfortable. On the beach, my sister, Mariam made a sandcastle, but I played football.

My mum made sandwiches for us. My dad read the newspaper under the umbrella. There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was frightened. It was really an unusual adventure in the cave. We enjoyed our stay in Hurghada very much.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
....
2. Why didn't Mariam want to go into the cave ?
....
3. What do you think of Hurghada as a tourist city ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....
   a. beach b. sandcastle c. Hurghada d. weather
5. The underlined word "**sea**" means ....
   a. fresh water b. sweet water c. dirty water d. salt water
6. My mum made .... for us.
   a. juice b. sandwiches c. sandcastles d. tea

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Where did you .... yesterday ?
   a. go b. went c. goes d. going
2. SB There were camels in the ....
   a. desert b. sea c. river d. lake
3. Nada .... a mobile phone five years ago.
   a. buy b. didn't buy c. doesn't buy d. buying
4. You should .... your answers in each question in the exam.
   a. make b. check c. do d. go

   (El Maragha-Souhag 2020)
5. Children enjoy building .... on the beach. *(Rafah-North Sinia 2020)*
   a. mud b. sandcastles c. rock d. mountain

6. SB We swam in the lake and ______ the mountain.
a. climbed b. went c. rode d. made

7. She ______ make noise as she was in the library. (Abou Homous - Beheira 2020)
a. do b. does c. didn't d. isn't

8. It's dangerous to ______ in a lake alone.
a. drive b. swim c. ride d. eat

9. There are a lot of trees in the ______ . (South Sinai 2020)
a. jug b. jungle c. lake d. cave

10. When I go to Alexandria, I enjoy sitting on the ______ . (Zefta-Gharbia 2020)
a. beach b. cave c. field d. mountain

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB I <u>go</u> into the cave last week. (______)
2. What did you <u>ate</u> for dinner last night ? (East Cairo 2020) (______)
3. <u>Was</u> your friends at the park yesterday ? (______)
4. She <u>doesn't</u> go to the beach yesterday. (______)

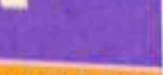
6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"A picnic at Al Azhar Park"

____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____

LESSONS

3 & 4



SB pages 48 : 50 WB pages 104 & 105



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

view (n)	منظر طبيعى	castle (n)	قلعة
reorder (ed) (v)	يعيد ترتيب	flag (n)	علم - راية
camp (ed) (v), (n)	يعسكر / معسكر	project (n)	مشروع
souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية	check (ed) (v)	يفحص
market (n)	سوق تجارى	students (n)	طلاب
study (ied) (v)	يدرس - يذاكر	culture (n)	ثقافة
course (n)	دورة تدريبية	advertisement (n)	إعلان

تنويه
- **Key Vocabulary** هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 104

friendly (adj)	ودود	holiday flat (n)	شقة لقضاء الأجازة
travel (led) (v)	يسافر	sea animals (n)	الحيوانات البحرية

Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 105

wonderful (adj)	رائع	language school	مدرسة لغات
exciting (adj)	مثير	safari rides (n)	رحلات سفارى
activity (n)	نشاط	really (adv)	حقًا
London Eye (n)	لعبة فى الملاهى (بلندن)	Germany (n)	ألمانيا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
come	يأتى	came	come
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
here	هنا	there	هناك
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

camp	sleep outside in a tent	يعسكر
castle	a large, old building with towers	قلعة
dolphin	a grey sea animal that is very clever and can jump high	دولفين
flag	the colours of a country on a piece of material	علم
hotel	a building where you can pay for a room to sleep in for a night or longer	فندق
queen	a woman who rules a country	ملكة
tower	a tall, narrow part of a building	برج
souvenir	something that you buy to remember a place or an event you went to	هدية تذكارية
view	the things you can see from a certain place	منظر طبيعي
holiday flat	an apartment you can stay in for a holiday, usually near the sea	شقة لقضاء الأجازة

II Listening and Reading





- on Lesson 3 SB page 48

Hatem : Hi, Yunis! How was your holiday ?
Yunis : Hi, Hatem! It was great, thanks !
Hatem : Where did you go ?
Yunis : I went to Jordan[1] by plane.
Hatem : Wow! Did you visit your family there ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) دولة الأردن

Yunis : No, we stayed in a holiday flat[2] by the beach. We had a wonderful view[3] from the windows. Every morning, I saw dolphins in the sea.

Hatem : Did you swim in the sea ?

Yunis : Yes, we did. We swam every day ! We used a map[4] and read a book about Jordan, and we visited a lot of famous places. We went to this old castle. Look, here's a picture of it on my phone.

Hatem : How did you get to the castle[5] ?

Yunis : We climbed up the mountain!

Hatem : Did you buy any souvenirs ?

Yunis : Yes, I did. I bought this small souvenir for you.

Hatem : Oh, how interesting. Egypt's flag is also red, white and black. Jordan's flag has another colour – green, too. Thanks, Yunis !

Check Vocabulary

(2) شقة لقضاء الإجازة	(3) منظر طبيعي	(4) خريطة	(5) قلعة



Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 50

Learn English in London !

⊙ Our students[1] come from all around the world to study and learn in this exciting[2] city.

⊙ Holiday courses[3] are for one, two or three weeks.



I had a wonderful[4] time at the language school I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries. My favourite place was Windsor Castle[5]. We went there by train. We walked all around the castle, but we did not see the Queen !

Mona, Egypt



I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time ! London's shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of souvenirs[6]. My favourite activity[7] was a ride on the London Eye, because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.

Laura, France

Check Vocabulary

(1) طلاب	(2) مثير	(3) دورات تدريبية	(4) رائع	(5) قلعة ويندسور في إنجلترا	(6) هدايا تذكارية	(7) نشاط

When I first came to the language school, I was not very good at English. But the teachers helped me a lot. The lessons were fun, and for homework we did interesting projects[8]. I enjoyed speaking English !

Jurgen, Germany



Check Vocabulary

مشروعات (8)

Videoscript Lesson 3 SB page 48

Narrator : Almost[1] 15 million people come to Egypt every year. It's a very popular[2] place for a holiday.
When people come to Egypt, they can visit exciting cities like Alexandria , ... beaches, ... caves, ... and the beautiful desert. They also come to see the many important places from history[3]. This is the Khan family. They're from Jordan[4]. Last year they visited Egypt on holiday. They visited Giza to see the Pyramids[5] and the Sphinx[6]. And they rode on a camel. They visited the beautiful city of Luxor. Then, they went to the Valley of the Kings[7]... where they visited the Karnak Temple[8]. They also spent some days in Cairo.
They went shopping in the Khan el-Khalili market[9]. Here, they bought souvenirs for their friends back at home. Finally, they went to Hurghada and they swam in the Red Sea.
Egypt is a wonderful place for a holiday.
Where do you want to go ?

Check Vocabulary

تقريبا (1)	محبوب / مشهور (2)	تاريخ (3)	دولة الأردن (4)	الأهرامات (5)
ابو الهول (6)	وادي الملوك (7)	معبد الكرنك (8)	سوق خان الخليلي (9)	



Listening

on Lesson 3 WB page 104



Narrator 1

Man 1 : Where did you go on holiday last year ?

Narrator 2
Man 1 : Where did you stay ?
Narrator 3
Man 1 : How did you travel there ?
Narrator 4
Man 1 : Did you climb a mountain ?
Narrator 5
Man 1 : What did you eat ?



on Lesson 4 WB page 105

Hi Ali

Last summer, I travelled to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I went to a language school in Cairo. I had a wonderful time.

I was there for two weeks. The people in Cairo were very friendly. Now I have many new friends.

When I first went to the language school, I wasn't very good at Arabic. But the teachers helped me, and the lessons were fun. Now I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are fantastic. I bought lots of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I enjoyed the view of the city from the top.

What did you do last summer ?
Write soon and tell me.
Andy, England.



General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 Arab - Arabic

- **Arab** — عربى الجنسية / شخص عربى
  ex.:- Arab countries should help each other.
- **Arabic** — لغة عربية
  ex.:- People in Egypt speak Arabic.

2 remember - remind

* remember — يتذكر من تلقاء نفسه

  ex.:- Do you remember yesterday's homework ?

* remind — يذكر شخص آخر بشىء

  ex.:- Salma reminded me with her birthday.

3 in + لغة

ex.:- I can talk to my friends in Arabic.

- Tourists usually speak to sellers in English.

4 for + مدة زمنية

ex.:- I was at a language school for four years.

5 souvenirs / presents

* souvenirs — هدايا تذكارية (تذكر بمكان الزيارة)

  ex.:- I bought souvenirs for my family from Paris.

* presents — هدايا (تقدم فى المناسبات)

  ex.:- On my birthday, I got a lot of presents.

6 enjoy + (inf. + ing)

ex.:- I enjoyed speaking English. — لاحظ عدم استخدام حرف جر بعد enjoy

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have + (وجبة)	يتناول (وجبة)	by the lake = next to the lake	بجوار البحيرة
do a project	ينفذ مشروع	make an advertisement for	يصنع إعلانًا لـ
go on a holiday	يذهب فى أجازة	find out	يكتشف
get to school	يصل للمدرسة	stay at	يقيم فى
from the top	من على القمة	walk to school	يمشى للمدرسة
have a great holiday	يقضى أجازة رائعة	come from + (بلد)	يأتى من (بلد)
have a wonderful time	يقضى وقتًا ممتعًا	from all around the world = from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت		
at the market	فى السوق	make a list	يعد قائمة
go with	يذهب مع	the view of	منظر لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Every country has a different ....
   a. culture b. door c. hotel d. castle
2. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday.
   a. view b. project c. souvenir d. hotel
3. Egypt's .... is red, white and black.
   a. fig b. fin c. fan d. flag
4. He is bad at English, so he's going to have a/an .... next summer.
   a. culture b. advertisement c. course d. hotel

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. SB On the London Eye, there was a beautiful .... from the top.
   a. project b. activity c. souvenir d. view
6. WB "............ " is to sleep for a time in a tent. *(Al-Agami - Alex. 2020)*
   a. Camp b. Leave c. Swim d. Climb
7. SB Which holiday .... can people do in Egypt ? *(امتحان مجمع بنى سويف – الفشن ٢٠٢١)*
   a. weeks b. views c. activities d. souvenirs
8. .... are very friendly sea animals. *(South Giza 2020)*
   a. Sharks b. Dolphins c. Snakes d. Whales

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. You can search for a job in .... in newspapers.
   a. articles b. flats c. courses d. advertisements
10. Some people like to send their children to .... schools to learn foreign languages لغات أجنبية.
    a. sports b. language c. art d. religious
11. The clever engineer .... very beautiful buildings.
    a. hits b. adds c. cooks d. designs

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. Many students come from all .... the world to study here.
    a. round b. above c. around d. opposite

13. When you go shopping, you should .... a list first.
a. give b. make c. do d. go

14. .... countries should help each other.
a. Arab b. Arabic c. Arabia d. Arabs

15. Can you talk to your friends .... English ?
a. on b. up c. in d. into

16. My mother buys her things every week .... the market.
a. of b. with c. at d. into

III Language

تم شرح زمن الماضى البسيط فى الدرس الأول والثانى من الوحدة

- I played tennis last week.
- Did you play tennis last week ?
- When did you play tennis ?

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 50 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة رقم ٢٣٧ ثم قم بالتدرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What's the main idea of the passage ?

- Learning English in London.

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. How long are the holiday courses in London ?

- ....

3. How did Mona go to Windsor Castle ?

- ....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. I visited London to learn English and had a holiday.
   ١. لقد زرت لندن لتعلم الإنجليزية وقضيت أجازة.
2. I enjoyed holiday courses and had a wonderful time in a language school.
   ٢. لقد استمتعت بدورات تدريبية وقضيت وقتًا رائعًا بمدرسة لغات.
3. The teachers helped me a lot to speak English well.
   ٣. ساعدنى المدرسين كثيرًا لتحدث الإنجليزية جيدًا.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

help - helped - Where - ate - was

1. ………… did you spend your holiday ? - In Alex.
2. I ………… a lot of fish yesterday.
3. My mother ………… me with my homework.
4. It ………… a very beautiful holiday.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your last visit to the museum."

……………………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………………

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about last holiday

السؤال والإجابة عن آخر أجازة قضيتها

Questions 	Answers 
• Where did you spend your last holiday ? أين قضيت آخر أجازة لك ؟	- I spent it in Hurghada. لقد قضيتها فى مدينة الغردقة.
• Did you swim in the sea ? هل سبحت فى البحر ؟	- Yes, I did. نعم، سبحت.
• What did you see there ? ماذا رأيت هناك ؟	- I saw the dolphin show. لقد رأيت عرض الدولفين.
• What food did you eat ? ما الطعام الذى تناولته هناك ؟	- I ate a lot of fish. لقد تناولت الكثير من السمك.

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Nour is telling Hana about her holiday.

Hana : Hi, Nour, How was your holiday ?

Nour : Hi, Hana. It was great, thanks.

Hana : Where (1) .... you go ?

Nour : I went to France.

Hana : Did you visit the Eiffel Tower ?

Nour : Yes, I (2) ....

Hana : Did you enjoy your time there ?

Nour : Yes, I (3) .... my time there.

Hana : (4) .... did you come home ?

Nour : I came back (5) .... Sunday. *(East Tanta - Gharbia 2020)*

2 Read the following, then answer the questions : *(Mashtoul - Sharkia 2020)*

My name is Mona. I live in Cairo. I work hard at school to be a doctor. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak English well to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too ! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was **fantastic** ! I cycled to summer school every day and I met students from different countries. Now, I have a friend from Uganda ! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in **it** !

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

....

2. Who did Mona go to London with ?

....

3. Do you think that Mona enjoyed her visit to London ? Why ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. What did not Mona use to learn English ?

a. Her teacher b. Her phone c. A laptop d. A tablet

5. The underlined word "**fantastic**" means ....

a. ugly b. very good c. very large d. very bad

6. The underlined word "**it**" refers to the ....

a. school b. river c. sea d. computer

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In Sharm El Sheikh, there is a "........... show" in the pool.

a. camel b. shark c. dolphin d. rabbit

2. WB Last summer, my family .... a fantastic holiday.

a. has b. had c. have d. hasn't

3. In a/an .... school, children can learn many languages.

a. ordinary b. public c. language d. Arabic

4. WB Where did Andy .... last summer ?

a. went b. go c. goes d. going

5. At school, we .... a lot of exciting projects last year.

a. made b. looked c. did d. tried

6. WB A .... is a big, strong building from the past.

a. mall b. circle c. castle d. cassette

7. In the area of the Pyramids, you can .... horses.

a. drive b. give c. eat d. ride

8. Salma didn't .... fish for lunch.

a. eats b. eaten c. ate d. eat

9. People do courses to study and ....

a. earn b. learn c. steal d. lose

10. Dina's best .... was Windsor Castle.

a. time b. distance c. place d. cinema

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB What did Yunis see and **did** there ? (...........)
2. When we went to Wadi El Ryan, we **camp** by the lake. (...........)
3. What food did you eat ? - I **eat** a lot of fish. (...........)
4. I **have** a wonderful time at the hotel last summer. (...........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A day on the beach"

....

....

....

....

LESSONS 5 & 6

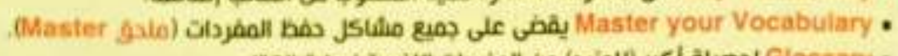
SB pages 51 & 52 WB pages 106 & 107



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

postcard (n)	كارت بريدى	email (n)	رسالة بريد إلكترونى
snail (n)	حيوان القوقع	theatre (n)	مسرح
light (n)	ضوء	the Eiffel Tower (n)	برج إيفل
sign (n)	لافتة / علامة	signature (n)	توقيع
great (adj)	عظيم	response (n)	رد
rule (n)	قاعدة		



تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 106

emotion (n)	عاطفة / شعور	windy (adj)	عاصف
repeat (ed) (v)	يردد/ يكرر	boat trip (n)	رحلة بالقارب
tourist (n)	سائح	sandals (n)	صندل (حذاء مفتوح)
sentence (n)	جملة	play (n)	مسرحية
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	follow (ed) (v)	يتبع
expression (n)	تعبير	pity (n)	عطف / شفقة

Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 107

closed (adj)	مغلق	continue (d) (v)	يستمر
greeting (n)	تحية	Ramses Station (n)	محطة رمسيس
art (n)	الفن / الأعمال الفنية	tickets (n)	تذاكر
header (n)	رأس الصفحة	café (n)	كافتيريا
pass (ed) (v)	يمر على	closing (n)	خاتمة
forms (n)	صيغ / أشكال	sender (n)	الراسل
topic (n)	موضوع	Australia (n)	دولة أستراليا

Famous places

أماكن مشهورة

The Science Museum	متحف العلوم	The Louvre	متحف اللوفر
The River Seine	نهر السين	The Valley of the Kings	وادى الملوك
Luxembourg Gardens	حدائق لوكسمبورج	the Nile	نهر النيل

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
lose	يخسر/ يفقد	lost	lost
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell	fallen

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
past	و(فى الساعات)	to	إلا (فى الساعات)
many	عديد/ كثير	few	قليل (للعدد)
win	يفوز	lose	يخسر

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

snail	a small, slow animal with a shell on its back	حيوان القوقع

II Listening and Reading

Listening

- on Lesson 5 SB page 51



Man : What did you do yesterday, Mazin ?
Mazin : I went to the zoo.
Man : Oh, that's interesting! Did you enjoy the day ?
Mazin : No, I didn't.
Man : Oh, dear ! Why not ?
Mazin : Well, first, we went to see the monkeys. But they were all very tired. I think they were in bed.



Man : What a pity ! So you didn't see them ?

Mazin : No, we didn't. Then we went into a cave to see the bats. But it was dark, and I didn't see anything.



Man : What did you do next ?

Mazin : Then, we bought an ice cream and went to see the elephants. It was bath time for them.



Man : Wow ! How exciting !

Mazin : Yes, I enjoyed that. But then something bad happened.

Man : Oh, no! What happened ?

Mazin : An elephant ate my ice cream!



Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 52

New message

From : Fatma | To : Azza

Subject : My holiday

Hi, Azza !

I am back from my holiday(1) in Paris. I had a wonderful(2) time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious(3). I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails!(4).

One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view(5) of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic(6) in the Luxembourg Gardens.



Check Vocabulary

(1) أجازة	(2) رائع	(3) لذيذ	(4) قواقع	(5) منظر طبيعى	(6) نزهة فى الهواء الطلق

We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity we did not have time to go to the Science Museum[7]. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre, but it was closed.

Near our hotel there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards. I also bought you a souvenir[8]. It is a very small Eiffel Tower[9]!

You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.

See you soon!

Fatma

Check Vocabulary

متحف العلوم (7)	هدية تذكارية (8)	برج ايفل (9)

on Lesson 5 WB page 106

Hanan : I went to the beach last weekend.
Lina : Really ?
Hanan : When we arrived, it was very windy.
Lina : Oh dear!
Hanan : We didn't want to swim in the sea.
Lina : What a pity!
Hanan : Then the wind stopped and we went on a boat trip.
Lina : How exciting !
Hanan : We saw six big dolphins !
Lina : Wow!
Hanan : Then my brother's phone fell in the water.
Lina : Oh no!
Hanan : The phone was OK. Some new phones can go in water !
Lina : That's interesting!

on Lesson 6 WB page 107

Hi Fady,




1. Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station[1], then we got on the train. There were people from many countries[2] on the train, for example, England and Australia.

Check Vocabulary

محطة (1)	دول (2)

2. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed[3] Giza. I enjoyed the view[4] from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.
3. We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train here. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings[5] !
4. The train continued to Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us ! It was a wonderful journey[6].

See you soon !

Mazin

Check Vocabulary

(3) مر على	(4) منظر طبيعى	(5) وادى الملوك	(6) رحلة رائعة

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 back

* back (n) — ظهر
  ex.: My back hurts me.
* (be) back (v) (adj) — يعود / عائد
  ex.: I'm back from my holiday in Paris.

2 get on / get into / get out of / get off

* get on — يركب مواصلة (يدخلها واقفًا)
  ex.: - I got on the bus / the train ... etc.
* get into — يركب مواصلة (صغيرة)
  ex.: - I get into the car / the taxi.
* get out of — ينزل من مواصلة (صغيرة)
  ex.: - I got out of the taxi quickly.
* get off — ينزل من مواصلة
  ex.: - She got off the bus and went home.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have a view of the city	يطل على المدينة	give examples	يعطى أمثلة
on the river	فى النهر	bath time	وقت الاستحمام
walk on the grass	يسير على الحشائش	in bed	فى الفراش (السرير)
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	travel from ...... to	
go on a boat	يذهب فى رحلة بالقارب		يسافر من ... (مكان)،... إلى ...(مكان)،...
see you soon	اراك قريبًا	for a holiday	لقضاء أجازة
for example	على سبيل المثال		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. My grandpa sent me a/an .... on my birthday.
   a. shop b. ticket c. rule d. postcard
2. Write your .... at the end of the email.
   a. address b. title c. signature d. age
3. What does this .... mean ? - It means "No smoking".
   a. song b. sign c. email d. snail
4. "............" is a delicious food in Paris.
   a. Snakes b. Snails c. Soda d. Seals

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. WB The people in Egypt are very ....
   a. friends b. friend c. friendly d. friendly way
6. The students took .... to sing the song. *(West Zagazig-Sharkia 2020)*
   a. turns b. repeats c. habits d. cover
7. WB My father bought our .... at Ramsis Station. (امتحان مجمع شمال سيناء - رفح ٢٠٢١)
   a. trains b. tickets c. presents d. sports
8. WB Hamdi went to buy rice, but the shop was ....
   a. open b. closed c. clean d. favourite

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. A place where we can watch plays is a ....
   a. zoo b. theatre c. cinema d. circus

10. I prefer wearing .... in summer. It's comfortable open shoes.
   a. dress   b. shoes   c. sandals   d. socks

11. .... come to Egypt to enjoy the good weather and great monuments.
   a. Thieves   b. Tourists   c. Scientists   d. Bats

12. The Eiffel .... is a famous place in Paris.
   a. River   b. Museum   c. Tower   d. Garden

13. A .... is a place where we keep historical objects.
   a. museum   b. library   c. bookshop   d. tower

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Don't .... on the grass.
   a. wake   b. walk   c. wear   d. wave

15. Where did you go .... holiday ?
   a. at   b. of   c. on   d. off

16. I saw many things from the .... of the tower.
   a. high   b. above   c. top   d. long

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 52 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٤٨ ثم قم بالتدرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What's the best title for the passage ?
   - **"Fatma's holiday in Paris".**

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. Why is Paris a great city for a holiday ?
   - ....

3. What did Fatma buy from the market ?
   - ....

2. Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

"A holiday in Paris" أجازة فى باريس

1. I had a wonderful time in Paris.
   ١. لقد قضيت وقتًا رائعًا فى باريس.
2. There's too much to see in Paris.
   ٢. هناك الكثير من الأشياء تستحق المشاهدة فى باريس.
3. I visited the Eiffel Tower and the Science Museum.
   ٣. لقد زرت برج ايفل ومتحف العلوم.
4. I bought some souvenirs and very good clothes.
   ٤. اشتريت بعض الهدايا التذكارية وملابس جيدة جدًا.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

went - visit - visited - was - had

1. Last year, we .... the Eiffel Tower.
2. I .... on a boat on the River Seine.
3. When we arrived at the hotel, it .... very windy.
4. We .... a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite place"

....

....

3. Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

1. Talking about holidays

التحدث عن أوقات الأجازة

- I spend my holiday in .... (اسم المكان).
- My favourite place is .... (اسم المكان) on holidays.
- I went with .... (أسماء الأشخاص) by .... (اسم الوسيلة).

2. Responding to news الاستجابة للأخبار

Situation الموقف	Response الرد
1. I have tickets to see the new play at the theatre.	- How interesting / exciting ! يا له من شئ رائع / مثير !
2. Hamdi went to the shops to buy rice, but the shop was closed.	- Oh dear ! يا للهول !
3. There is a good film on TV this evening.	- Really ? حقًا ؟
4. My favourite football team won 5-0 !	- Wow ! يا للروعة !
5. My favourite football team lost 0-5 !	- Oh no ! What a pity! يا للحسرة!

Skills corner

★ تدرب على المهارات طبقاً للورقة الامتحانية كل درس على حده :

١- **مهارة القراءة** : تدرب على اسئلة قطعة الفهم (استخراج معلومات – اعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية – فهم ما يشيراليه الضمير – تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص – مهارة التفكير النقدي).

٢- **مهارة الكتابة** : تدرب على كيفية الكتابة مع مراعاة (التنظيم – التهجى – ترابط الافكار – علامات الترقيم – القواعد اللغوية – اختيار المفردات اللغوية).

٣- **مهارة التحدث** : تدرب على اتقان الوظائف اللغوية للتعامل مع سؤال المحادثة فى الامتحان.

المعاصر فى اللغة الانجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

General Exercises



LESSONS **5 & 6**

• Understand • Apply • Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Last ...., Andy travelled to Egypt.
   a. winter b. summer c. spring d. autumn
2. Andy wanted to learn ....
   a. English b. maths c. science d. Arabic
3. Andy went to a .... in Cairo.
   a. language school b. zoo c. park d. museum
4. Andy had a .... time in Egypt.
   a. sad b. long c. short d. wonderful

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer is telling Nader about his holiday in Alexandria.

Nader : Where did you go on holiday last year ?
Tamer : I (1) .... to Alexandria.
Nader : Where did you stay ?
Tamer : I stayed in my uncle's flat.
Nader : (2) .... did you travel there ?
Tamer : I travelled (3) .... train.
Nader : Did you (4) .... in the sea ?
Tamer : Yes, I did.
Nader : What did you eat there ?
Tamer : I (5) .... delicious fish. *(El Agami-Alex. 2020)*

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB We usually .... an email with "Hi" or "Dear".
   a. stop b. repeat c. finish d. start
2. Students should follow the school ....
   a. roles b. rules c. rulers d. expressions

3. Judy .... many things from the top of Cairo Tower yesterday.
a. saw b. see c. sees d. seen

4. Every year, a lot of .... come to Egypt and visit the Pyramids.
a. carpenters b. teachers c. tourists d. mechanics

5. WB The wind stopped and we .... on a boat trip.
a. go b. went c. goes d. gone

6. He is .... from his holiday in London.
a. back b. black c. bake d. break

7. Last week, I .... a nice time in New York.
a. took b. had c. gave d. bought

8. They didn't .... to swim in the sea.
a. wants b. want c. wanted d. wanting

9. Many tourists visit the .... of the Kings.
a. Volley b. Village c. Valley d. Voice

10. On the Nile, there were a lot of ....
a. boots b. nuts c. boats d. boxes

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB Who did you **talked** to at the break ? (...........)
2. We **eat** a lot of things at the café yesterday. (...........)
3. It **is** windy yesterday. (...........)
4. The train **leaves** to Aswan and arrived there at 3 p.m. (...........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A holiday in Paris"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Test on unit 5

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار
إلكترونيا وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did they go ?
   a. To Cairo b. To Siwa c. To Alexandria d. To Luxor
2. They .... in the lake.
   a. sailed b. fished c. swam d. ate
3. They saw .... and slept in a tent.
   a. cats b. dogs c. cows d. camels
4. It was his .... holiday.
   a. favourite b. bad c. happy d. sad

(El Fashn - Beni Suef 2020)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sara is talking to a tourist from London.

Ann : Hi, where are you from ?
Sara : I'm from Egypt. And you ?
Ann : I'm (1) .... London.
Sara : Oh. How did you (2) .... to Egypt ?
Ann : By plane. I am here with my family.
Sara : What's your father's job ?
Ann : He is a (3) ....
Sara : A dentist ? And what's your mother's (4) .... ?
Ann : She is a (5) ....
Sara : Like my mother, she is a teacher, too.

(Hehia - Sharkia 2020)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I will never forget this year's holiday. At first, I thought this holiday would be boring because I was going to the sea with my family.

The beginning was quite **boring** but I went with my family to the sea. We stayed for 3 weeks there ! We stayed at a nice hotel but **it** was quite expensive hotel. I think the hotel was near the sea. It was really comfortable. During the holiday, I met a lot of kind and interesting people. They became my friends. We built sandcastles, swam and visited many places. The weather was great. I enjoyed my holiday.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. Why did the writer think the holiday would be boring ?

....

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The opposite of the underlined word "**boring**" is ....

a. careful b. interested c. interesting d. bad

5. The hotel wasn't .... the sea.

a. far from b. near c. behind d. next to

6. At first, the writer thought the holiday would be ....

a. boring b. good c. nice d. interesting

(Abou Hamad - Sharkia 2020)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB The .... says "Don't walk on the grass".

a. signal b. list c. song d. sign

2. Salwa .... a story yesterday.

a. wrote b. writes c. writing d. write

3. SB My favourite .... was Al-Azhar Park.

a. time b. place c. team d. food

4. She .... visit the zoo last week.
   a. doesn't b. don't c. didn't d. wasn't
5. In Paris, we enjoyed going on a .... trip on the River Seine.
   a. shop b. boat c. ship d. raft
6. What did Mona .... in her office yesterday ?
   a. found b. find c. finds d. finding
7. I'd like to go to the .... as I like swimming.
   a. mountain b. rock c. sand d. beach
8. Last summer, we swam in the .... and saw the dolphins show.
   a. sea b. beach c. desert d. pound
9. He didn't go into the cave because he was ....
   a. frightened b. kind c. short d. brave
10. WB We slept in a .... in the desert.
   a. bed b. tent c. box d. hat

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They **don't** visit their uncle a week ago. (..........)
2. WB When we arrived, it **is** very windy. (..........)
3. Hala **sleeps** for 3 hours yesterday. (..........)
4. He **didn't** happy at the park yesterday. (..........)

E. Writing

6 WB Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A trip you made"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Quiz on units 1,2,3,4&5

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (١، ٢، ٣، ٤ و ٥)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (B) or (A) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات



Model A



Marks

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Last month, we .... our grandparents in Alexandria.
   a. visiting b. visited c. visit d. will visit
2. A .... is a group of people who play music together.
   a. parent b. chorus c. band d. party
3. At break, I play games with my friends in the ....
   a. library b. classroom c. laboratory d. playground
4. .... they got any friends ?
   a. Do b. Have c. Can d. Has
5. You shouldn't .... litter in the park.
   a. drop b. fall c. follow d. ride



Model B

Marks

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. All the students like .... teacher.
   a. them b. ours c. their d. his
2. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday.
   a. souvenir b. view c. castle d. culture
3. She .... like swimming.
   a. don't b. isn't c. hasn't d. doesn't
4. You can use the mouse to .... on different icons on the computer.
   a. tap b. click c. design d. make
5. We often .... shopping at the weekend.
   a. go b. make c. give d. have

UNIT 6 Let's eat !

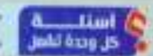
SB pages 54 : 63 WB pages 109 : 115

Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A recipe; reviews of a dish; a text about healthy snacks; a text about food in Africa
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph describing a picture; an online review of a café
- **Listening :**
  A conversation about what food there is; an interview about healthy drinks; a conversation in a café
- **Speaking :**
  Asking and answering about food in a picture; giving advice; ordering food in a café
- **Language :**
  Countable and uncountable nouns; should and shouldn't for advice
- **Life Skills :**
  Decision making; problem solving
- **Issues :**
  Preventative health



- كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة اليومية والامتحانات في نهاية الكتاب.
- ملحق (Master your term).



- العلامة تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.

LESSONS **1 & 2**

SB pages 54 : 57 WB pages 109 & 110



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

olives (n)	زيتون	saucepan (n)	طاسة
ingredients (n)	مكونات	hummus (n)	حمص (طحينة)
biscuits (n)	بسكويت	coconut (n)	جوز الهند
sugar (n)	سكر	crisps (n)	مقرمشات
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	teaspoon (n)	ملعقة شاى
rice pudding (n)	أرز بلبن	raisins (n)	زبيب
cinnamon (n)	قرفة		

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 54 & 55 · WB page 109

nuts (n)	مكسرات	peppers (n)	فلفل
market (n)	سوق	figs (n)	تين
salt (n)	ملح	again (adv)	مرة أخرى

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 110

recipe (n)	وصفة (طهى)	instructions (n)	تعليمات
minutes (n)	دقائق	quarter (n)	ربع
add (ed) (v)	يضيف	bowl (n)	سلطانية / وعاء
slowly (adv)	ببطء	equipment (n)	معدات
stir (red) (v)	يُقلب	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
perfect (n)	تام / ممتاز	amount (n)	كمية

half (n)	نصف	cooking (n)	طبخ
share (d) (v)	يتقاسم / يشارك	decide (d) (v)	يقرر
ready (adj)	جاهز / مستعد	plate (n)	طبق (مسطح)
review (n)	مقال نقدى		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sit down	يجلس	sat down	sat down
bring	يحضر	brought	brought

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
popular	شعبى / محبوب	unpopular	غير محبوب
quick	سريع	slow	بطىء
sweet	حلو	salty	مالح
delicious	لذيذ الطعم	terrible	كريه / فظيع

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

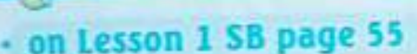
add	put something together with another thing	يضيف
biscuit	a sweet snack baked in the oven, usually small, flat and round	بسكويت
cheese	a yellow, white or orange food that is made from milk	جبن
cinnamon	a sweet spice used in cooking	قرفة
crisps	hard, dry potato pieces that you eat as a snack	مقرمشات
cup	something you can drink from, about 250 ml	فنجان
equipment	the things you need to do an activity	معدات
fig	a sweet fruit with a purple skin that is very soft inside	تين
fridge	a machine that keeps food and drink cold	ثلاجة
hummus	a soft food made from chickpeas	حمص (طحينة)
ingredient	something you use to make food	مكون / مقدار

nut	a small, dry fruit with a hard shell	جوز الهند
olive	a small, green or black fruit that you eat, or use to make oil	زيتون
pepper	a green, red or yellow vegetable that you cook or eat in a salad	فلفل
raisin	a small, dry grape	زبيب
recipe	instructions on how to make a meal	وصفة طهي
salad	cold, fresh vegetables (not cooked) together in a bowl	سلطة
saucepan	a round container used to cook things	طاسة
stir	move around ingredients, sugar, etc. with a spoon	يقلب
teaspoon	a small spoon of about 5 ml	ملعقة شاي

II Listening and Reading







Nadia : Let's make lunch[1]. I think we've got all the food.

Omar : There's some salad[2]. Is there any hummus[3] ?

Nadia : No, there isn't. But there are some olives[4].

Omar : There are some peppers[5], too.

Nadia : Good! Is there any cheese ?

Omar : Yes, there is. I've got it.

Nadia : What about figs ? Are there any figs[6] ?

Omar : No! There aren't any figs.

Nadia : There are some raisins[7].

Omar : That's good.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يعد وجبة الغداء (2) سلطة (3) حمص (طحينة) (4) زيتون (5) فلفل (6) تين (7) زبيب

Reading

• on Lesson 2 SB pages 56 & 57

Roz Bel Laban : Egyptian Rice Pudding[1]



Ingredients[2] :

- 1 cup of rice
- 2 cups of water
- 3 cups of milk
- 1 cup of sugar
- $\frac{1}{4}$ a cup of raisins[3]
- $\frac{1}{4}$ a cup of nuts
- $\frac{1}{4}$ a teaspoon[4] of cinnamon[5]



Instructions :

1. Put the rice and water in a saucepan[6].
2. Boil[7] the rice and water for 20 minutes.
3. Add[8] the milk slowly as you stir[9].
4. Add the sugar and stir again.
5. Put the rice pudding into bowls.
6. Put the raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top.
7. Put the rice pudding in the fridge[10].



Reviews of the recipe

Really easy! * * * * *

This is a great recipe[11]. It's really easy to make. There aren't a lot of ingredients and it's very quick to cook.
Fawzi



OK, but a bit boring[12] * * *

I liked this rice pudding, but it isn't my favourite. I think there are too many raisins. I don't like them. I prefer rice pudding with coconut[13].

Hana



Check Vocabulary

(1) أرز بلبن	(2) مكونات	(3) زبيب	(4) ملعقة شاى	(5) قرفة	(6) طاسة	(7) يغلى
(8) يضيف	(9) يقلب	(10) ثلاجة	(11) وصفة	(12) ممل قليلًا	(13) جوز هند	

Perfect ! * * * * *

There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the whole family[14]. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food.
Nabila



Not like my mum's rice pudding! * *
My mum's rice pudding is delicious, but this rice pudding isn't very good. There's too much sugar and there aren't enough other ingredients.
Salem



Check Vocabulary

(14) الأسرة بأكملها

on Lesson 2 WB page 110

Mrs Amal has a lot of friends. Today, she is cooking for ten people. She has enough plates for people to eat on, but she does not have enough chairs, so her friend brings some. Now all the food is ready, but there is fish and rice for fifteen people, not ten! She has too much fish and rice. She decides to ask five more people but they can't all sit down. There are too many people and not enough chairs!

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 Let's + inf. هيا بنا (تستخدم للاقتراح)

ex.: - Let's go swimming.

Let (مفعول + inf.) تستخدم للاستئذان

- Let us play in the garden, dad, please.

2 What kind of .... ? ما نوع

ex.: - What kind of food do you like ?

3 sweet (n) (adj) حلوى - حلو المذاق

ex.:- Children like eating sweets. (حلوى)

- There are a lot of sweet things in the fridge. حلو المذاق

4 recipe / ingredients

* recipe وصفة أو التعليمات الخاصة بطبخ معين من الطعام

ex.:- What is the recipe for rice pudding ?

* ingredients مكونات ومقادير نوع طبق معين من الطعام

ex.:- Rice, pasta and onions are the main ingredients of koshari.

5 prefer + (v + ing) / noun يفضل

ex.:- I prefer watching TV.

- I prefer rice pudding with coconut.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

end in ..	ينتهى بـ ..	decide to + (inf.)	يقرر أن
make (food) for ...	يعد الطعام	It's quick to cook.	إنها سريعة الطبخ.
in bold	بخط غامق	a teaspoon of cinnamon	ملعقة صغيرة من القرفة
on top	على القمة	for 20 minutes	لمدة عشرون دقيقة
It's (easy) to (make).	سهلة التحضير	put ... into bowls	يضع ... فى أوعية
for the whole family	للأسرة بأكملها		

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. A .... is a kitchen equipment used for keeping food.
   a. bridge b. fridge c. spoon d. oven
2. .... oil is very healthy for all people.
   a. Meat b. Olive c. Hummus d. Cheese
3. .... have a lot of fat and salt.
   a. Olives b. Crisps c. Fruits d. Sweets

4. .... are dried grapes used for some sweet foods like rice pudding.
a. Nuts b. Biscuits c. Figs d. Raisins

5. There's too much .... in the tea. I can't drink it.
a. coffee b. pepper c. sugar d. salt

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. .... is not an ingredient. *(West Mahalla - Gharbia 2020)*
a. Rice b. Nut c. Stir d. Raisin

7. WB There isn't enough .... to make hot chocolate. *(امتحان مجمع الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢١)*
a. tea b. milk c. coffee d. juice

8. Which of the following is not a cooking verb ? *(El Saf - Giza 2020)*
a. Pudding b. Boil c. Stir d. Add

9. SB Put rice and water in a .... before cooking rice pudding.
a. bag b. teaspoon c. saucepan d. cup

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. It's delicious to put a teaspoon of .... on the food.
a. water b. tea c. rice d. cinnamon

11. The way by which we cook some foods and their ingredients is called a/an ....
a. rhyme b. review c. recipe d. advice

12. My mum's rice pudding is .... We like it so much.
a. terrible b. bad c. salty d. delicious

13. Mum .... the rice and water for 20 minutes on the cooker.
a. washed b. boiled c. drank d. ate

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. After my mother cooks the rice pudding, she puts it .... bowls.
a. on b. into c. from d. at

15. I prefer .... rice pudding with coconut.
a. eat b. eats c. eating d. ate

16. What .... of food do you like most ? - Egyptian food.
a. colour b. age c. kind d. name

III Language

1 Countable and uncountable nouns
الأسماء التي تُعد والتى لا تُعد

Countable nouns
- الأسماء التى (تعد) لها (مفرد وجمع).
- الاسم المفرد الذى (يُعد) يسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

Uncountable nouns
- الأسماء التى لا تعد (ليس لها جمع) وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الاسم المفرد الذى (لا يُعد) لا يُسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

Countable (singular)		Countable (plural)	Uncountable		Uncountable	
an apple	تفاحة	apples	hummus	حمص (طحينة)	water	ماء
a potato	ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes	furniture	أثاث	money	نقود
a man	رجل	men	salt	ملح	sugar	سكر
an ox	ثور	oxen	advice	نصيحة	news	أخبار
a loaf	رغيف خبز	loaves	cheese	جبن	milk	لبن

ex. - Apples contain vitamins. (countable noun اسم يُعد)
- Milk is very useful. (uncountable noun اسم لا يُعد)

2 some - any

(a) some

تستخدم (some) بمعنى (بعض) فى الحالات الآتية :

1. Countable nouns :
١. مع الأسماء التى تعد :

some books | some chairs | some eggs

ex. - I have some books.

2. Uncountable nouns :
٢. مع الأسماء التى لا تعد لتشير إلى كمية غير محددة :

some water | some sugar | some salad

ex. - She has some juice.

تستخدم (some) فى السؤال فى حالة العرض والطلب :

ex. - Would you like some tea ? (عرض)
- Can I have some water, please ? (طلب)

(b) any

تستخدم (any) بمعنى (أى) فى الحالات الآتية :

Negative statements :

• فى الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

(مع الأسماء الجمع التى تعد والأسماء التى لا تعد) :

ex. - There aren't any vegetables in the fridge.
- There isn't any meat in the dish.

Interrogative :

• فى صيغة الاستفهام :

ex. - Do you have any tomatoes ? (countable noun اسم يعد)
- Is there any salad in the dish ? (uncountable noun اسم لا يعد)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB There are .... peppers, too. *(امتحان مجمع القرية - المحلة ٢٠٢١)*
a. some b. any c. an d. much
2. WB There is some salt, but there .... any crisps.
a. is b. are c. aren't d. isn't
3. There aren't .... tablets in our class. *(North Giza 2020)*
a. some b. much c. any d. a lot
4. SB Is there .... cheese in the dish ?
a. no b. any c. some d. many
5. We don't have .... money. *(El Zeitoun - Cairo 2020)*
a. many b. some c. any d. do

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. Meat .... my favourite food.
a. are b. am c. is d. aren't
7. There aren't .... tomatoes in the fridge.
a. some b. any c. much d. no
8. Can I have .... orange juice, please ?
a. any b. some c. many d. a lot

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. There isn't <u>some</u> sugar on the table. *(East Zagazig - Sharkia 2020)* (............)

2. SB There's some cheese. There **isn't** any olives. (..........)
3. We haven't got **some** computers in this room. *(Wasat Alex. 2020)* (..........)
4. SB **Is** there any figs in the fridge ? (..........)
5. WB There **aren't** any milk to make hot chocolate. (..........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. Can I have **any** water ? (..........)
7. There **isn't** any canals near our village. (..........)
8. **Are** there any sugar ? (..........)

a lot of, enough, too much, too many

We can use these words with countable and uncountable nouns.

يمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات مع الأسماء التى تُعد والأسماء التى لا تُعد.



1 a lot of كثير من
- + **countable noun** اسم يعد — ex. - There are a lot of books.
- + **uncountable noun** اسم لا يعد — ex. - There is a lot of sugar.

2 enough كاف
- + **countable noun** اسم يعد — ex. - Salma has enough pens.
- + **uncountable noun** اسم لا يعد — ex. - Sama has enough milk.

3 too many عدد أكثر من اللازم
- + **countable noun** اسم يعد جمع — ex. - There are too many boys.

too much كمية أكثر من اللازم
- + **uncountable noun** اسم لا يعد — ex. - There is too much sugar.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB There are too many people and not .... chairs.
   a. much b. any c. enough d. some
2. There is too much .... in the market today. (West Mahala - Gharbia 2020)
   a. vegetables b. rice c. fruits d. people
3. Don't put .... butter in the pan. (Nasser - Beni Suef 2020)
   a. enough b. too much c. many d. some
4. WB I don't like this tea. There is too .... sugar in it.
   a. a lot b. many c. much d. some
5. SB Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we shouldn't drink .... of it. (امتحان مجمع القرية - المحلة ٢٠٢١)
   a. too much b. too many c. many d. enough
6. There's .... rice for you all. (El Agami - Alex. 2020)
   a. many b. any c. lot d. enough

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. We'd like to have .... hummus with kofta.
   a. many b. too many c. a lot d. a lot of
8. I have got .... potatoes in our farm.
   a. too much b. much c. too many d. a lot
9. There is .... milk in the bottle.
   a. many b. too many c. enough d. a lot

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. There are <u>enough</u> people on this beach. Let's go to a different one. (West Tanta - Gharbia 2020) (........)
2. WB Mrs Amal has too <u>much</u> friends. (........)
3. SB There isn't too <u>many</u> milk. (........)
4. WB There are too many people and not <u>much</u> chairs. (........)
5. SB There is <u>a lot</u> sugar. (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. There isn't too many tomatoes. (..........)

7. There are too much apples. (..........)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB pages 56 & 57 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٧٠ ، ٢٧١
ثم قم بالتدرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

1. Why do you think rice pudding is easy to make ?
   - **Because there are not a lot of ingredients.**

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

2. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   - ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Extracting information** إستخراج المعلومات

3. Hana likes rice pudding but it isn't her favourite because there too many ....
   a. raisins b. apples c. coconuts d. seeds

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. This recipe is easy to make.
١. إن هذه الوصفة سهلة الصنع.
2. Some people like rice pudding very tasty.
٢. يفضل بعض الناس الأرز باللبن حلو المذاق.
3. Other people like to add some nuts and raisins on the top.
٣. يفضل الآخرون إضافة بعض المكسرات والزبيب على القمة.
4. I prefer rice pudding with coconut.
٤. أنا أفضل الأرز باللبن مع جوز الهند.
5. There's enough rice pudding for the whole family.
٥. يوجد أرز باللبن بما فيه الكفاية للعائلة بأكملها.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

likes – a lot of – great – is – are – like

1. This is a .... recipe.
2. There .... a lot of rice pudding recipes online.
3. We .... Roz Bel Laban, Egyptian rice pudding.
4. There aren't .... ingredients in rice pudding.
5. There .... a lot of sugar in this recipe.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Egyptian rice pudding"

....

....

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

1. Asking and answering about foods

السؤال والإجابة عن الأطعمة

Questions ?	Answers ✔
• Is there any + (اسم مفرد) ?	- Yes, there is. - No, there isn't.
• Is there any cheese ? هل يوجد أى جبن ؟	- Yes, there is. نعم، يوجد.
• Are there any + (اسم جمع) ?	- Yes, there are. - No, there aren't.
• Are there any olives ? هل يوجد أى زيتون ؟	- No, there aren't. لا، لا يوجد.

2. What food (do / don't) you like ?

ما الطعام الذى (تحبه / لا تحبه) ؟

Questions ?	Answers ✔
• What food do you like ? ما الطعام الذى تحبه ؟	- I like nuts. أحب المكسرات.
• What food don't you like ? ما الطعام الذى لا تحبه ؟	I don't like olives. لا أحب الزيتون.

General Exercises  LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. There are a lot of rice pudding .... online.
   a. recipes b. books c. ingredients d. instructions
2. There is enough rice pudding for the whole ....
   a. girls b. family c. boys d. teachers
3. There is a lot of .... in the recipe.
   a. cinnamon b. nuts c. milk d. sugar
4. I like sweet ....
   a. raisins b. cinnamon c. food d. milk

(West Tanta - Gharbia 2020)

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Hend are making lunch.

Mona : I'm hungry. Let's make lunch.

Hend : OK. There is some salad. Is there any hummus ?

Mona : No, there isn't, but there (1) .... some olives.

Hend : There are some peppers, (2) ....

Mona : Good. Is there (3) .... cheese ?

Hend : Yes, there is.

Mona : What about figs ? Are (4) .... any figs ?

Hend : (5) ...., there aren't any figs.

Mona : Are there any raisins ?

Hend : Yes.

(Beni Mazar-Menia 2020)

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There is some cheese in the fridge, but there .... any tomatoes.
   a. aren't b. is c. isn't d. are
2. "........... " is the opposite of "difficult".
   a. Popular b. Top c. Quick d. Easy

3. WB There .... any olives at the market today.
   a. isn't b. aren't c. is d. are
4. You can have rice .... after your meal as a dessert.
   a. cinnamon b. pudding c. saucepan d. teaspoon
5. WB We don't need to share because there is .... rice for everyone.
   a. enough b. too many c. many d. a lot
6. The main .... of salad are tomatoes, cucumbers and onions.
   a. kinds b. types c. ingredients d. colours
7. A .... means a set of instructions for cooking food.
   a. bill b. ball c. hill d. recipe
8. You can put the raisins, ... and nuts on top of rice pudding.
   a. olives b. saucepan c. cinnamon d. salad
9. WB To .... is to move around ingredients, sugar, etc. with a spoon.
   a. add b. cook c. stir d. bring
10. Put the food in the .... to be cool.
   a. fridge b. heater c. cooker d. oven

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB No, there aren't **some** figs. (............)
2. There is **many** water in the jug. (............)
3. SB Are there any biscuits ? - No, there **isn't**. (............)
4. **Are** there any cinnamon in this recipe ? (............)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Rice pudding"

....

....

....

....

....

....

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 58 : 60 WB pages 111 & 112



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

fizzy drinks (n)	مشروبات غازية	snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
taste (d) (v) (n)	يتذوق / طعم	cooking pot (n)	وعاء للطبخ
teeth (n)	أسنان	dinner time (n)	وقت العشاء
meal (n)	وجبة	tagine (n)	طاجن (أكلة فى دولة المغرب)
onions (n)	بصل	pasta (n)	مكرونة
chocolate (n)	شيكولاتة	vegetables (n)	خضروات

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 111

advice (n)	نصيحة	weight (n)	وزن
way (v)	طريقة / وسيلة	diagram (n)	رسم توضيحى
fat (n)	دهن	type (n)	نوع
fantastic (adj)	رائع	illness (n)	مرض

Lesson 4

SB page 60 WB page 112

traditional (adj)	تقليدى	spices (n)	توابل
nyama na irio	(نياما نايرو) طبق لحم مع بطاطس مطهى على نار هادئة	amazing (adj)	رائع / مذهل
kapenta	(كابنتا) طبق أسماك مشهور فى زيمبابوى	shepherd's pie	فطيرة الراعى لحم بالخضار والبطاطس (بإنجلترا)
stew (n)	الطهى على نار هادئة / طاجن لحم مع خضار	dry (ied) (v)	يجفف

Kenya	دولة كينيا	South Africa	دولة جنوب إفريقيا
wonderful (adj)	رائع	Zimbabwe (n)	دولة زيمبابوى

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
come يأتى	came	come

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
bad for	ضار لـ	good for	مفيد لـ
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل
hungry	جائع	full up	شبعان
healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

bean	a long, narrow green vegetable that you usually eat cooked	فول
cake	a sweet food that you bake in the oven	كعك (كيك)
carrot	a long, narrow, orange vegetable that grows in the ground	جزر
chocolate	a sweet food that is made from cocoa beans	شيكولاتة
fat	natural oil in food	دهون
fizzy drinks	a drink that has bubbles فقاعات and a lot of sugar	مشروبات غازية
fruit juice	the liquid from a fruit that you can drink	عصير فاكهة
salt	a natural, white ingredient that can come from the sea, it makes food taste better	ملح
snack	a small amount of food that you eat between meals	وجبة خفيفة
spices	parts of a plant that you can put in food to give it a special taste	توابل
stew	a meal made with meat and vegetables in one pot	طاجن لحم مع خضار
vegetable	a plant you can eat e.g. a carrot	خضار

II Listening and Reading



on Lesson 3 SB page 59

Presenter : It's important to eat the right[1] things, but we shouldn't forget[2] about what we drink. Dr Randa Zaki is here to tell us more. Dr Randa, what should we drink ?

Dr Randa : Well, we should drink a lot of water. Water is great[3] because it hasn't got any fat[4] or sugar.

Presenter : OK, so we should drink more water. And which drinks are bad for[5] us ?

Dr Randa : Some drinks have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth.

Presenter : So we shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar. Some fizzy drinks[6] don't have any sugar. Are they OK ?

Dr Randa : No, fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth, even when they don't have sugar.

Presenter : So we shouldn't have fizzy drinks. Are there any drinks good for our teeth ?

Dr Randa : Yes, milk is good for our teeth. We should try[7] to drink a glass of milk every day.

Check Vocabulary

(1) صحيح / مناسب	(2) ينسى	(3) رائع / عظيم	(4) دهن	(5) مضر لـ	(6) مشروبات غازية	(7) يحاول

on Lesson 4 WB page 112

Boy 1 : In England, people often have a traditional meal called shepherd's pie. You make it with meat, carrots and other vegetables with potatoes on top. It is wonderful. My favourite meal is shepherd's pie, and then chocolate ice cream!



on Lesson 3 SB page 58

Healthy Snacks[1]

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way[2] to enjoy healthy snacks ?

Crisps and cakes

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt[3]. Cakes, chocolate[4] and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies[5].

Fantastic fruit

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces[6] of fruit a day.



Beans and vegetables[7]

Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus[8] with carrot and pepper[9] are delicious[10].

Be careful!

We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar so we should not drink too much of it. Olives[11], meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

Check Vocabulary

(1) وجبات خفيفة	(2) أفضل طريقة	(3) ملح	(4) شيكولاتة	(5) أجسام	(6) قطع
(7) خضروات	(8) حمص(طحينة)	(9) فلفل	(10) لذيذ	(11) زيتون	

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Food in Africa



Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite meal is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.

Marwa



I live in Morocco[1]. Tagine[2] is a traditional meal from my country. It is a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. The taste is amazing! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.

Hamza



In Kenya, people often make nyama na irio for dinner. It is a stew with meat and potatoes[3]. It is wonderful! I love eating it after school when I am very hungry!

Makena



Kapenta[4] is a popular[5] type of fish in Zimbabwe. We catch the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. We often cook it with tomatoes and onions[6]. It is great!

Bradley

Check Vocabulary

(1) دولة المغرب	(2) طاجن	(3) طاجن من البطاطس واللحم يطهى على نار هادئة	(4) (كابينتا) أكلة سمك فى زيمبابوى	(5) شعبى / محبوب	(6) بصل

Videoscript Lesson 3 SB page 58

Narrator : What did you eat for lunch today ? Did you eat some falafel[1] or a chicken salad[2] ?
Or perhaps you enjoyed some delicious[3] meat and rice.
And what did you drink ? Maybe you had some water, a cup of tea or some nice orange juice.
The food that we eat today is similar to[4] the food that the ancient Egyptians[5] ate a long time ago. The ancient Egyptians ate a lot of bread. In fact, people believe[6] that the ancient Egyptians made the first bread in the world.

Check Vocabulary

(1) طعمية	(2) سلطة دجاج	(3) لذيذ	(4) مشابه لـ	(5) قدماء المصريين	(6) يعتقد

The ancient Egyptians used the land[7] near the River Nile[8] to grow[9] a lot of different fruit and vegetables.
They also grew enough wheat[10] to make bread. Bread was a very important food in ancient Egypt. Scientists found some bread in the tomb[11] of Mentuhotep the Second in Luxor. It was 4,000 years old !
Pharaohs[12] and other important people ate bread with a lot of fruit, such as figs and dates[13]. They also had it with honey[14]. Bread is still important today. From this bread in Egypt today to bagels[15] in the USA and baguettes[16] in France, people all around the world love it at all times of the day.

Check Vocabulary

(7) أرض	(8) نهر النيل	(9) يزرع	(10) قمح	(11) مقبرة	(12) الفراعنة
(13) بلح	(14) عسل	(15) نوع من الخبز على شكل دوائر			(16) خبز فرنساوى

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 everyone + فعل مفرد

ex.: - Everyone loves snacks. They love eating the snacks between meals. ولكن للحظ عند التعويض عليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير الجمع (**they**) وفعل جمع.

2 enjoy / like / love + (inf. + ing) / noun

يتبع هذه الأفعال (inf + ing) أو اسم

ex.: - I enjoy eating healthy snacks.
- I love snacks.

3 a piece of / pieces of + uncountable noun

ex.: - I want a piece of bread.
- I eat four pieces of fruit a day.

4 fruit + فعل مفرد

ex.: SB Fruit is a great snack.

5 stew (n/v)

- stew (n) طعام مطهو على نار هادئة/طاجن لحم بالخضار

ex.: Tagine is a stew with meat, vegetables and spices.

- stew (v) يطهو على نار هادئة

ex.: I left the meat to stew.

6 need to = should يجب

ex.: SB You need to have healthy foods that help your body to grow.

7 catch معانى مختلفة للفعل

catch a thief يقبض على لص

catch fish يصطاد سمك

catch a bus يلحق بالاتوبيس

catch a ball يمسك كرة

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

cook (something) with .. يطهو شيء مع شيء آخر ..	give advice on ... يعطى نصيحة عن
It's the best way to ... أفضل طريقة لـ	stop eating (something) .. يتوقف عن تناول شيء نهائيًا ..
It's OK to ... من الأفضل أن	
even with ... حتى مع	Be careful ! احترس / احذر !
It's a good idea to ... إنها فكرة جيدة أن	look after يعتنى بـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Fruit and .... give us a lot of vitamins.
   a. cakes b. vegetables c. rice d. biscuits
2. Tagine is the name of a .... and a cooking pot in Morocco.
   a. mile b. dress c. drink d. meal
3. Most people like drinking .... drinks with their meals.
   a. busy b. dizzy c. fizzy d. crazy

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. We should be careful, even with .... foods. *(South Giza 2020)*
   a. healthy b. unhealthy c. fast d. bad
5. My father always has a .... before he goes to bed. *(Rasheed - Beheira 2020)*
   a. breakfast b. lunch c. snack d. snake
6. SB .... has got rice and pasta in it. It's an Egyptian meal.
   a. Tagine b. Kapenta c. Koshari d. Burger
7. SB Kapenta is a .... of fish in Zimbabwe. (امتحان مجمع إسكندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢١)
   a. colour b. tape c. type d. size
8. .... give food a delicious taste. *(Kafr El Dawar - Beheira 2020)*
   a. Cultures b. Spices c. Reviews d. Spaces

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. It's 7 p.m. Don't leave the house as it's .... time. We're hungry.
   a. play b. breakfast c. dinner d. lunch
10. Tagine includes meat in it. It's a .... meal in Morocco.
    a. modern b. traditional c. careful d. thirty
11. Our science teacher drew a .... on the board to show the experiment.
    a. sheep b. dog c. diagram d. river
12. Koshari doesn't contain ...., but it's a very delicious meal.
    a. pasta b. tomatoes c. meat d. rice
13. The .... of kapenta is very delicious. I prefer eating it.
    a. list b. test c. taste d. least

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. You should .... eating fast food.
    a. stop b. drop c. fall d. drive
15. Eating healthy food is the best .... to be fit.
    a. road b. form c. way d. shape
16. You should .... after your teeth and don't eat much chocolate.
    a. make b. take c. look d. give

III Language



Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (should & shouldn't) بمعنى ينبغي أن / لا ينبغي أن تستخدم الصيغ التالية لإعطاء النصيحة.

should

Subject (الفاعل) + should + inf. ..... (المصدر)

ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بفعل شيء جيد أو مفيد»

ex. You should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.

shouldn't

Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + inf. ..... (المصدر)

لا ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل شيء غير جيد أو غير مفيد»

ex. You shouldn't eat too many crisps and cakes.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Yes / No question

Should + subject (الفاعل) + inf. .... ? (المصدر)

ex. Should we eat lots of fish ?

- Yes, you should.
- No, you shouldn't.

Wh-question

Question word + should + subject (الفاعل) + inf. .... ? (المصدر)

ex. What should I eat ?

- You should eat fruits and vegetables.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. You should .... a lot of fruit and vegetables. *(Matai - Menia 2020)*
   a. eat b. ate c. to eat d. eating
2. WB The saucepan is very hot. You .... touch it.
   a. shouldn't b. can c. haven't d. should
3. SB We .... drink a glass of milk every day. (امتحان مجمع الشرقية - مشترك ٢١ ٢٠)
   a. shouldn't b. can't c. mustn't d. should
4. You .... help the poor. *(Abou Humus - Beheira 2020)*
   a. should b. shouldn't c. couldn't d. shall
5. We .... have drinks with a lot of sugar. *(El Sheikh Zowayed-North Sinia 2020)*
   a. should b. shouldn't c. must d. have to
6. You should .... your password secret. *(Rasheed - Beheira 2020)*
   a. keep b. keeps c. keeping d. kept

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. When it is windy, you .... go out.
   a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. might
8. What should I .... to get high marks ?
   a. do b. did c. does d. done
9. You shouldn't .... under water for too long.
   a. stayed b. stays c. stay d. staying
10. You .... drink water from the canal.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. may d. must

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB You **should** have fizzy drinks. (...........)
2. WB You shouldn't **eating** snacks in the class. (...........)
3. You **should to** clean your teeth before sleeping. *(Port Said 2020)* (...........)
4. You **should** eat too much chocolate. *(Al Azhar - the East area 2020)* (...........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. You **shouldn't** look after your health. (..........)
6. What should I **did** to be healthy ? (..........)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 60 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة رقم ٢٨٥ ، ٢٨٦ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   - *"Food in Africa"*

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. What is the traditional meal in Morocco ?
   - ....

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدي

3. What do you think is the best meal for the Egyptians in this passage ? Why ?
   - ....

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. Some snacks are bad for health. ١. بعض الوجبات الخفيفة ضارة بالصحة.
2. You shouldn't eat many crisps and cakes.
   ٢. لا ينبغي أن تأكل الكثير من المقرمشات والكيك.
3. Fruit is a very good snack as it's good for bodies.
   ٣. الفاكهة وجبة خفيفة جيدة لأنها مفيدة للأجسام.
4. Some snacks like hummus with carrots are delicious and healthy.
   ٤. بعض الوجبات الخفيفة مثل الحمص (الطحينة) مع الجزر لذيذة وصحية.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

love – should – a lot – loves – shouldn't – is

1. Heba .... snacks.
2. Fruit .... a great snack.
3. You .... drink too much of fruit juice.
4. Crisps have .... of fat and salt.
5. You .... eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Healthy and unhealthy snacks"

....

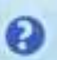
....

3. Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Asking and answering about good and bad foods

السؤال والإجابة عن الأطعمة الجيدة والضارة

Questions 	Answers 
• Which snacks are good for you ? - أى من الوجبات الخفيفة مفيدة لك ؟	- Fruits are good for me. الفواكه مفيدة لى.
• Which snacks are bad for you ? - أى من الوجبات الخفيفة ضارة بك ؟	- Chocolate and biscuits are bad for me. الشيكولاته والبسكويت أطعمة ضارة بى.

Self Assessment Activity



قيم نفسك.

◂ ليتعرف الطالب على مدى اتقانه لأهداف الوحدة.

◂ فى حالة عدم إجتيازه يتم الانتقال إلى صفحة **Review** لمراجعة الوحدة مرة اخري.

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Heba and her mother are talking about healthy and unhealthy snacks.

Mother : What are you eating, Heba ?
Heba : I'm eating (1) ....
Mother : But they're not (2) .... for your teeth.
Heba : But I like sweets, mum.
Mother : I know, but you shouldn't eat too many sweets.
Heba : (3) ...., mum ?
Mother : Because they have too much (4) ....
Heba : What (5) .... I eat ?
Mother : You should eat fruits and vegetables.
Heba : OK, I'll have an apple. *(West Zagazig-Sharkia 2020)*

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The food that we eat today is **similar** to the food that the ancient Egyptians ate a long time ago. The ancient Egyptians ate a lot of bread. In fact, people believe that the ancient Egyptians made the first bread in the world. The ancient Egyptians used the land near the Nile to grow a lot of different fruit and vegetables. They also grew enough wheat to make bread. Bread was a very important food in ancient Egypt. Scientists found some bread in the tomb of Mentuhotep the Second in Luxor. It was four thousand years old. Pharaohs and other important people ate bread with a lot of fruit such as figs and dates. They also had **it** with honey. Bread is still important today.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is this passage about ?
....
2. Who made the first bread in the world ?
....
3. Where did the ancient Egyptians grow fruit and vegetables ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
a. date b. fruit c. bread d. honey
5. The bread in the tomb was .... years old.
a. 40000 b. 4000 c. 400 d. 1400

6. The opposite of the underlined word "**similar**" is .... *(El Saf-Giza 2020)*
a. different b. small c. difficult d. enough

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB We .... eat too much cake. It has too much sugar in it.
a. should b. shouldn't c. must d. can
2. Crisps have a lot of .... and salt.
a. chocolate b. fat c. sugar d. fruit
3. WB You should always .... your teeth before you go to bed.
a. cleans b. cleaned c. clean d. cleaning
4. Tagine is a .... meal in Morocco.
a. dry b. traditional c. unhealthy d. bad
5. You should drink a .... of milk a day.
a. glass b. glasses c. tube d. bag
6. They often .... kapenta in Zimbabwe with tomatoes and onions.
a. describe b. taste c. catch d. cook
7. To be fit, what should I .... ?
a. do b. does c. did d. doing
8. We can .... with our tongues.
a. smell b. taste c. touch d. look
9. Rice, pasta and tomatoes are the main .... of koshari.
a. recipes b. ingredients c. members d. fans
10. To .... means to cook something slowly in a liquid.
a. bake b. throw c. stew d. roast

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You **shouldn't** eat healthy food. (............)
2. We **should** have fizzy drinks. (............)
3. You shouldn't **plays** in busy roads. (............)
4. Hurry up to **catching** the bus. (............)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite dish"

....

....

....

....

LESSONS **5 & 6**

SB pages 61 & 62 WB pages 113 & 114



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

café (n)	كافيتريا / مقهى	customer (n)	زبون
menu (n)	قائمة طعام	large salad (n)	سلطة حجم كبير
pounds (n)	جنيهات	waiter (n)	جرسون
chef (n)	رئيس طهاه		

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5
SB page 61 WB page 113

apple juice (n)	عصير تفاح	order (ed) (v), (n)	يطلب / طلب

Lesson 6
SB page 62 WB page 114

walls (n)	جدران	soon (adv)	قريبًا / فى القريب العاجل
basbusa (n)	بسبوسة	include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن
kunafa (n)	كنافة	details (n)	تفاصيل
weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	support (ed)(v)	يدعم / يساند
fresh (adj)	طازج	reasons (n)	أسباب / مبررات
hope (d) (v)	يأمل / يتمنى	description (n)	وصف
sweets (n)	حلوى		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
cost	يتكلف	cost	cost
grow	ينمو / يكبر	grew	grown
leave	يغادر	left	left
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
much	كثير (للكمية)	little	قليل (للكمية)
many	كثير (للعدد)	few	قليل (للعدد)
real	حقيقي / واقعي	unreal	غير حقيقي / غير واقعي

II Listening and Reading



on Lesson 5 SB page 61



Assistant : Hello. What would you like today ?
Customer : I'd like a cheese and tomato pizza, please.
Assistant : OK. Anything else ?
Customer : Yes, a salad, please.
Assistant : Small or large ?
Customer : Small, please.
Assistant : And would you like any drinks ?
Customer : Have you got any fruit juice ?
Assistant : Yes, we've got apple juice and orange juice.
Customer : I'd like an orange juice, please.
Assistant : Is that everything ?
Customer : Yes, it is.
Assistant : That's 105 pounds, please.
Customer : Thank you, here you are.





on Lesson 5 WB page 113

Waiter : Hello. What would you like today ?
You : Hello. Have you got any pizza ?
Waiter : Yes. Small or large ?
You : Large, please.

Waiter : What would you like to drink ?
You : I'd like some cola, please.
Waiter : Anything else ?
You : No, thank you. How much are these ?
Waiter : That's thirty pounds, please.
You : Thank you, here you are.

on Lesson 6 SB page 62

City Café

Great visit ! ***** Review by : Sara

I visited this café last weekend[1] with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We chose this café for lunch because it looked very nice. The walls[2] were green and white and there were big windows[3]. (I love looking out of the window and watching the city).

Ashraf and I both[4] had rice for lunch. I had fish with rice and he had chicken. My dad had fish with rice, too, and mum had a salad[5].
It's very healthy ! We all liked our food.

After lunch, Ashraf and I had cakes. This was the part[6] we enjoyed most! There were a lot of different cakes and they all looked delicious[7]! I chose basbousa[8] and Ashraf had kunafa[9]. They were amazing!!!
I'd like to visit this café again[10] (very soon)!

Check Vocabulary

(1) عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	(2) حوائط / جدران	(3) نوافذ	(4) كلا منا	(5) سلطة
(6) جزء	(7) لذيذ	(8) بسبوسة	(9) كنافة	(10) مرة أخرى

on Lesson 6 WB page 114

1. I want to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Damietta last summer with my dad, mother and sister. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. (It was wonderful watching the boats on the water.)



2. I had my favourite meal, koshari. I love koshari but this was different than usual. It was delicious. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food.



3. We then all had Egyptian Rice Pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.

4. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again (one day)!

• on Lesson 6 WB page 114

A meal which I always remember is fish and rice. At a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to the restaurant again soon.

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 'd like / 'd love / 'd prefer ⟶ (to + inf.) يود / يرغب فى

ex.:- What would you like to have ?
- I'd prefer to have cheese pizza.

• I'd like some + noun.

ex.:- I'd like some chicken pizza.

2 meal - snack

• meal (lunch وجبة الغداء dinner وجبة العشاء breakfast وجبة الإفطار) وجبة رئيسية

ex.: I always have a meal with my family in the evening.

• snack وجبة خفيفة (بين الوجبات)

ex.: We can buy a snack from this restaurant.

3 taste

* taste (v) (n) يتذوق / مذاق

ex.: - I taste with my tongue.
- The taste of koshari is amazing.

* taste + (adj) طعمه / مذاقه

ex.: Koshari tastes delicious.

4 café / coffee

* café مقهى (المكان)

ex.: - Ayman always sits at this café to have his morning tea.

* coffee القهوة (المشروب)

ex.: Ashraf never drinks coffee. It makes him awake all the time.

5 menu / list

* menu قائمة الطعام

ex.: The waiter brought us the menu to choose the food we'd like to eat.

* list قائمة أشياء أو أسماء

ex.: Write the things you need in a list before going shopping.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look very nice	تبدو لطيفة جدًا	have fish with rice	يتناول السمك مع الأرز
look out of the window	ينظر من الشباك	come to	يصل إلى
the part we enjoyed most	الجزء الذي استمتعنا به كثيرًا	different than usual	مختلف عن المعتاد
		go back to	يعود إلى
Here you are.	تفضل.	see a doctor	يزور الطبيب
make sure	يتأكد		

Exercise on Vocabulary

◉ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Key vocabulary

1. Our .... enjoy having our different kinds of pizza every day.
   a. waiters   b. pupils   c. customers   d. patient
2. The .... works in the restaurant.
   a. waiter   b. doctor   c. teacher   d. nurse
3. This meal costs 150 Egyptian ....
   a. pools   b. pounds   c. ponds   d. tickets
4. Most young people in Egypt like to meet their friends in a ....
   a. hospital   b. school   c. café   d. bank

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. WB A .... which I always remember is fish and rice.
   a. mail   b. mile   c. meal   d. male
6. SB We stayed on the .... and enjoyed the sea.
   (امتحان مجمع القاهرة - مصر الجديدة ٢٠٢١)
   a. beach   b. desert   c. moon   d. valley
7. First, look at the .... then choose your dish. *(El Riad - Kafr El Shikh 2020)*
   a. foot   b. menu   c. meat   d. plate

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. .... is my favourite dessert.
   a. Tomato   b. Kunafa   c. Bread   d. Salad
9. I eat a lot of olives because they are .... for me.
   a. bad   b. unhealthy   c. good   d. ugly
10. You should .... the topic sentence with other sentences in a paragraph.
    a. include   b. support   c. forget   d. hope
11. **A :** Are you ready to .... , sir ?   **B :** Yes, I'd like chicken pizza.
    a. cook   b. order   c. cut   d. sell

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. Children should be careful and not to look .... low windows.
    a. of   b. out   c. out of   d. away from
13. The .... we enjoyed most of our picnic is the open air.
    a. port   b. pound   c. part   d. party

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) فى الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 WB page 114 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٩٨ , ٢٩٩ ثم قم بالتدرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   - **An amazing meal in Damietta.**

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

2. Do you think they had healthy dessert ? Why / Why not ?

- ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in a context**

تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص

3. The word "............" means instructions on how to make a meal.
   a. usual   b. recipe   c. delicious   d. café

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. I visited a great restaurant with my mum and dad yesterday.

١. لقد زرت مطعم رائع مع والدتى ووالدى أمس.

2. It was near the sea.

٢. كان بجوار البحر.

3. I had my favourite meal.

٣. لقد تناولت وجبتى المفضلة.

4. I had fish and rice.

٤. لقد تناولت السمك والأرز.

5. The fish was very fresh.

٥. لقد كان السمك طازج جداً.

6. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us.

٦. لقد قمنا باختيار الأسماك وقام الشيف بطهى هذه الأسماك لنا.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

was – hope – in – on – to visit – My

1. .... favourite meal is fish with rice.
2. It .... a wonderful meal.
3. I would like .... this restaurant again.
4. We enjoyed watching the boats .... the sea.
5. I .... we can go back to this restaurant again soon.

تنويه
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite meal"

....

....

3. Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

1. Ordering food in a café

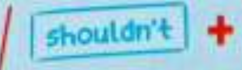
طلب طعام فى كافتيريا

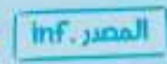
Waiter جرسون	Customer زبون
• What would you like to have ? ماذا تحب أن تتناول ؟	- I'd like to have + (اسم طعام / مشروب). أرغب فى تناول ....
• Have you got any .... ? هل يوجد لديكم أى .... ؟	- We've got .... لدينا ..... - Here you are. تفضل.
• Anything else ? هل تريد شيئًا اخر ؟	- Yes, I'd like some meat. - No, thanks.
• That's + رقم + pounds. إنها تبلغ ..... جنيهات.	- How much does it cost ? كم الثمن ؟

2. Giving advice

إعطاء النصيحة



/


+


ex.: - You should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.
- You shouldn't eat too many crisps and cakes.

General Exercises  LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. When did they visit the café ?
   a. Last week. b. Last month. c. Last year. d. Last weekend.
2. The writer visited the café with his ....
   a. cousins b. friends c. family d. uncle
3. They had .... in this café.
   a. snack b. lunch c. dinner d. breakfast
4. The .... were green and white.
   a. doors b. windows c. walls d. tables

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is at a restaurant.

Waiter : Hello. What would you like today ?
Ahmed : Hello. (1) .... you got any pizzas ?
Waiter : Yes, small or large ?
Ahmed : (2) .... , please. I am not very hungry.
Waiter : (3) .... would you like to drink ?
Ahmed : I'd like some orange (4) ...., please.
Waiter : Anything else ?
Ahmed : No, thank you. How much are these ?
Waiter : That's 50 (5) .... , please.
Ahmed : Thank you. Here you are. *(Gerga - Souhag 2020)*

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What does Khalid like to .... ?
   a. visit b. visits c. visiting d. visited
2. Where is the .... , please ? I want to order a meal.
   a. menu b. list c. diary d. ticket

3. A .... works in a hotel or a restaurant.
   a. chef　　b. chief　　c. chair　　d. cooker
4. What would you like to .... ? - I want fish and rice.
   a. make　　b. stick　　c. have　　d. teach
5. Fruit juice has got .... sugar in it.
   a. many　　b. too many　　c. a lot　　d. too much
6. The boy .... like his brother. They are twins.
   a. makes　　b. bakes　　c. looks　　d. takes
7. You .... follow the school rules.
   a. shouldn't　　b. should　　c. mustn't　　d. can't
8. Children should be .... and don't look out of low windows.
   a. careless　　b. careful　　c. unhealthy　　d. bored
9. We went to a new .... to have a drink yesterday.
   a. café　　b. coffee　　c. pool　　d. island
10. If you are ill, you should .... a doctor.
   a. see　　b. go　　c. deal　　d. drive

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB You should <u>to clean</u> your teeth in the morning. (...........)
2. We <u>shouldn't</u> eat fruit and vegetables. (...........)
3. What should Ali <u>did</u> to win the race ? (...........)
4. The class has got too <u>much</u> pupils. (...........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A visit to a café"

....

....

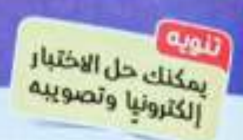
....

....

....

....

Test on unit 6



• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Tagine is a traditional meal in ....
   a. Italy b. Morocco c. Egypt d. Athens
2. Mazen likes ....
   a. koshari b. tagine c. meat d. chicken
3. The taste of tagine is .... !
   a. boring b. amazed c. bored d. amazing
4. The name comes from the cooking .... for this food.
   a. pot b. pan c. plate d. dish

(El Hamuol-Kafr El Sheikh 2020)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rana and Maya are talking about their favourite food.

Rana : What is your favourite food ?
Maya : It is (1) ....
Rana : Koshari ! Fantastic. What are its (2) .... ?
Maya : (3) .... , lentils, tomatoes and pasta.
Rana : Is it (4) .... ?
Maya : Yes, it is very delicious.
Rana : What else do you like ?
Maya : I enjoy (5) .... fish. What about you ?
Rana : I like kofta very much.
Maya : Wonderful !

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks ?

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like its sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of **them**. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are **delicious**. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

....

2. What do you think about snacks ?

....

3. How much fruit should you have every day ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**delicious**" is the opposite of ....

a. terrible b. good c. sweet d. healthy

5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....

a. cakes b. crisps and cakes
c. snakes d. beans and vegetables

6. Fish sometimes have ....

a. a lot of sugar b. a lot of salt
c. a lot of fat d. a lot of food *(Qena-Deshna 2020)*

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There is an Egyptian food on the ....

a. list b. menu c. form d. book

2. You .... make noise in the school library.

a. should b. should have c. shouldn't d. shouldn't have

3. I went to the Pyramids last week. They are .... !
   a. lazy   b. amazing   c. healthy   d. fizzy
4. There are .... classrooms in our school.
   a. much   b. too many   c. too much   d. a lot
5. Egypt is famous for many things .... its delicious food.
   a. answering   b. including   c. calling   d. playing
6. How much is this book ? - Only 30 ....
   a. eggs   b. pounds   c. litres   d. kilos
7. A .... is a person who brings food and drinks at a restaurant.
   a. waiter   b. doctor   c. teacher   d. carpenter
8. Are there .... boys in the playground ?
   a. some   b. any   c. much   d. little
9. Crisps have a lot of .... and salt.
   a. fans   b. vans   c. fat   d. fair
10. Chocolate and biscuits contain a lot of ....
   a. sugar   b. salt   c. juice   d. spices

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You **shouldn't** see the doctor when you are sick. (...........)
2. There **isn't** any pens in the bag. (...........)
3. There are too **much** books on the shelves. (...........)
4. How much **is** the book cost ? (...........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A traditional meal in Morocco"

....

....

....

....

....

....



Review B

SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 116 & 117



on Lesson 1 SB page 64

Sham El-Nessim

1 What and when is it ?

Sham El-Nessim is my favourite time of the year. We enjoy it at the start of spring[1]. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE!

2 What people do

Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a park or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea.

3 A recipe

On this day, we eat a lot of special[2] food. Do you want to know how to enjoy feseekh ? Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat too much!

4 What I did

Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we went to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games. Do you know what we are doing in this photo ? We are painting[3] eggs ! We always do this. We didn't see our cousins last year, but we made a video call[4]. It was fun to talk to them on the laptop.



Do you know any other special food ? Click on[5] the icon[6] at the top of this website. Take a photo and write an email about it. Send us a recipe[7] for it.

Check Vocabulary

(1) فصل الربيع	(2) خاص	(3) يلون	(4) مكالمة فيديو	(5) ينقر / يضغط على	(6) أيقونة	(7) وصفة طهي

· on Lesson 1 WB page 116

Judy's shopping list

Hi Judy,

The family party[1] is on Saturday. There are ten people. Can you help me and buy the shopping ?

Five people like fish. Five people like chicken. The children like fizzy drinks, but they aren't healthy. So, we can have orange juice. Four bottles are enough for the children. We can all drink water, so we need eight bottles. Buy some tea, too, please.

Please go to the shops and then check[2] we have enough chairs.

Many thanks

Mona

Check Vocabulary

(1) حفلة أسرية	(2) يفحص/يتأكد



· on Lesson 2 SB page 65









Narrator : In the UK, many people eat pancakes at the start of spring. How do you make pancakes ?

Put all your ingredients in a bowl, and add two eggs. Stir everything together. Put some butter in a pan. When the butter is hot, you should start cooking your pancakes! Cook each pancake for 2 or 3 minutes on one side. Then cook the other side of the pancake. Eat your pancakes with honey and nuts, or with sugar and lemon juice. Hmm, they are delicious!



on Lesson 1 WB page 116



Narrator : one

Boy 1 : I have tickets for the new play on Saturday.

Boy 2 : How exciting !

Narrator : two

Man 1 : I'd like a small salad, please.

Man 2 : Is that everything ?

Man 1 : Er, have you got any orange juice ?

Man 2 : Small or large ?

Man 1 : Large, please.

Narrator : three

Woman : First, put water in a kettle. Then, boil the water. Put the hot water in a cup with some hot chocolate. Don't add too much sugar. It isn't healthy.

Narrator : four

Girl : Last summer, we went to the Red Sea. I swam in the sea every day! It was wonderful.

Narrator : five

Woman : It's very hot today. You should drink a lot of water and you should wear a hat, too!



If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد .
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.



Mini-Test on Unit 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Mohamed and Mona are talking about using technology at school.

Mohammed : Do you use technology at your school ?
Mona : Yes, we do. We use tablets.
Mohammed : Really ? Can you use a tablet ?
Mona : Yes, I (1) ....
Mohammed : Which (2).................. do you use tablets in ?
Mona : All subjects.
Mohammed : Has your class (3).................. a smart board ?
Mona : Yes, it (4).................. .
Mohammed : Do you use mobile phone in class ?
Mona : (5).................., they aren't allowed.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There .... a tablet on the desk.
   a. has b. are c. is d. have
2. .... there any printers here ?
   a. Are b. Is c. Have d. Do
3. Hany .... his English book now.
   a. reads b. is reading c. reading d. read
4. Can you .... me a text message ?
   a. take b. send c. make d. do
5. .... on the icon on your laptop.
   a. Write b. Look c. Click d. Sit
6. Ziad has got a new MP3 ....
   a. player b. phone c. tablet d. computer
7. I'd like to .... a selfie at the top of the Pyramids.
   a. give b. make c. take d. top
8. Computers and mobile phones are examples of ....
   a. technology b. passwords c. nature d. video games
9. A .... is smaller than a computer.
   a. club b. sun c. tablet d. desert
10. .... the icon on your mobile phone to open the application.
   a. Clock b. Tap c. Print d. Charge

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Technology"

....
....
....
....

ممتاز
جيد جداً
جيد
غير جيد

If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

Mini-Test on Unit 5

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Last week, we .... the beach.
   a. visit b. visits c. are visiting d. visited
2. Where did you go .... holiday ?
   a. on b. of c. at d. by
3. Last summer, my family .... to Alexandria.
   a. go b. are going c. goes d. went
4. The .... is a big strong building from the past.
   a. attic b. sandcastle c. mountain d. castle
5. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday.
   a. project b. prize c. souvenir d. view
6. I want to go to the .... and swim in the sea.
   a. mountain b. rock c. beach d. cave
7. .... are very friendly sea animals.
   a. Sharks b. Dolphins c. Whales d. Snakes
8. We had a beautiful .... of the city from the tower.
   a. review b. view c. interview d. viewer
9. Children enjoy building .... on the beach.
   a. schools b. caves c. sandcastles d. mountains
10. There are a lot of trees in the ....
   a. jug b. jungle c. weather d. sky

2. Read and correct the underlined word :

1. I <u>study</u> my lessons yesterday. (..........)
2. Mona didn't <u>wanted</u> to go into the cave. (..........)
3. Yesterday, I had a picnic and <u>rides</u> a horse. (..........)
4. What did you <u>ate</u> for dinner last night ? (..........)

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite place"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

ممتاز
جيد جدا
جيد
غير جيد

Mini-Test on Unit 6

1. Complete the following dialogue :

A customer is ordering food at a café.

Waiter : Good afternoon, what would you like ?
Customer : I would like (1)........................ , please.
Waiter : OK. Anything else ?
Customer : Yes, juice please.
Waiter : Small or (2)........................ ?
Customer : (3)........................, please.
Waiter : And would you (4)........................ any desserts ?
Customer : Chocolate cake, please.
Waiter : Here you are.
Customer : (5)........................ .

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It's cold. You .... wear a jacket.
a. should b. shouldn't c. have d. haven't
2. There aren't .... mobile phones in our class.
a. some b. much c. any d. a lot
3. How .... bread does Mona eat ?
a. many b. much c. long d. often
4. We should eat .... food every day.
a. fizzy b. unhealthy c. healthy d. bad
5. .... oil is very healthy for all people.
a. Meat b. Olive c. Hummus d. Cheese
6. .... and cheese are my favourite food.
a. Equipment b. Petrol c. Salad d. Sand
7. Mona thinks that the .... of rice pudding is easy.
a. recipe b. road c. recycling d. equipment
8. You can boil water in a ....
a. saucepan b. teaspoon c. bowl d. cup
9. What .... of food do you prefer ?
a. kind b. old c. heavy d. unkind
10. To .... is to move a liquid around with a spoon or stick.
a. stick b. lick c. pick d. stir

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite food"

....
....
....
....

End of Term Practice

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Shorouk goes to school ....
   a. alone
   b. with Lubna only
   c. with her mother
   d. with Lubna and Alaa
2. Shorouk is in .... stage.
   a. nursery
   b. preparatory
   c. secondary
   d. university
3. Shorouk's parents work in ....
   a. the same place
   b. different places
   c. the same school
   d. a factory
4. .... work in a hospital.
   a. Alaa's parents
   b. Lubna's parents
   c. Shorouk's parents
   d. No parents

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nessma and Reem go to the school library.

Reem : Good morning, Nessma, when will we start doing our research ?

Nessma : During the break.

Reem : Great. Where (1) .... ?

Nessma : In the school library.

Reem : Are (2) .... ?

Nessma : Of course, I'm ready.

Reem : Is it easy to find the books we need ?

Nessma : (3) ....

Reem : Who will help us there ?

Nessma : (4) ....

Reem : I hope (5) .... !

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following , then answer the questions :**

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo, so I always work hard at school. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. Now I have a friend from Uganda! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in <u>it</u>!

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What are Mona's favourite subjects ?

....

2. Why does she want to speak English ?

....

3. Is Mona right to use technology ? Why ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "<u>it</u>" refers to ....
   a. Cairo　　b. technology　　c. a river　　d. summer school
5. Where is Mona now?
   a. In Egypt　　b. In England　　c. In Uganda　　d. In France
6. What does Mona use to practise her English?
   a. Her tablet　　b. Her phone　　c. Her laptop　　d. a and b
7. Mona goes to summer school by ....
   a. taxi　　b. train　　c. bicycle　　d. car

D. Vocabulary and Structures

4 **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. There are too .... people on this beach. Let's go to a different one.
   a. many　　b. much　　c. enough　　d. few
2. My uncle is very .... He chooses things wisely.
   a. strong　　b. tall　　c. fast　　d. sensible

3. I love acting. .... is my favourite school subject.
   a. Drama b. Maths
   c. Computer Studies d. Art
4. The Egyptian football team arrived .... Uganda two days ago.
   a. in b. at c. for d. from
5. On a .... weekend, Omar reads books at the club library.
   a. tropical b. physical c. spicy d. typical
6. Ahmed likes history because he loves .... about the past.
   a. learns b. to learning c. learning d. learnt
7. My father and mother are my ....
   a. grandchildren b. parents c. cousins d. daughters
8. The tourists are .... a selfie next to the River Nile.
   a. touching b. drawing c. relaxing d. taking
9. Tom is writing about his weekend in his online ....
   a. 3D printer b. diary c. mouse d. laptop
10. Why don't we .... swimming next week ?
   a. go b. do c. make d. see

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What <u>do</u> you have for breakfast yesterday ? (........)
2. There <u>are</u> too much salt in this recipe. (........)
3. Amr shouldn't drink too <u>many</u> fruit juice. (........)
4. Gymnastics <u>are</u> my favourite sport. (........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 70 – 80 words about a typical day in your life :

....
....
....
....
....
....

Glossary

المفردات اللغوية التى وردت فى الوحدات
لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد من المفردات اللغوية)

Unit 1

lessons 1 & 2

birthday	عيد ميلاد
football match	مباراة كرة قدم
game	لعبة
music	موسيقى

lessons 3 & 4

internet	الإنترنت
house	منزل
sheep	خروف - أغنام
take → took → taken	يأخذ - يستغرق
sleep → slept → slept	ينام
know → knew → known	يعرف
which	أى (تستخدم للاختيار)

* Which colour do you like ?
- The red colour.

at home	فى المنزل
stay in	يقيم فى

lessons 5 & 6

person	شخص
hour	ساعة (٦٠ دقيقة)
place	مكان
Africa	قارة أفريقيا
Damietta	مدينة دمياط
make → made → made	يجعل - يصنع
train	قطار / يتدرب

- People like travelling by train. قطار
- The athlete trains for 3 hours a day. يتدرب

Unit 2

lessons 1 & 2

lunch	وجبة الغداء
breakfast	وجبة الإفطار
photos	صور فوتوغرافية
room	حجرة / غرفة
hear → heard → heard	يسمع
get → got → got	يحصل على
drive → drove → driven	يقود
go to bed	يذهب للنوم
watch TV	يشاهد التلفاز

lessons 3 & 4

snow	جليد
winter	فصل الشتاء
China	دولة الصين
The USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
listen to	يستمع إلى
go to the same school	يذهب إلى نفس المدرسة
write a list	يكتب قائمة

lessons 5 & 6

English teacher	معلم اللغة الإنجليزية
have → had → had	يمتلك
at school	فى المدرسة
come to school	يأتى إلى المدرسة
in bed	فى الفراش
possession	ملكية



Unit 3

lessons 1 & 2

football	كرة القدم
tennis	لعبة التنس

volleyball	كرة الطائرة
camel	جمل
queen	ملكة
present	هدية
fast ≠ slow	بطيء ≠ سريع
friendly ≠ unfriendly	ودود ≠ غير ودود
long : not short	طويل
short : not long	قصير

lessons 3 & 4

because	لأن

lessons 5 & 6

swimming	السباحة
reading	القراءة
sometimes	أحياناً
happy ≠ sad	سعيد ≠ حزين
run ⟶ ran ⟶ run	يجرى



lessons 1 & 2

under	تحت
behind	خلف
granddad = grandfather	جد
classroom	حجرة الدراسة
use	يستخدم
big ≠ small	كبير ≠ صغير
on his desk	على مكتبه
write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد إلكترونى
look at	ينظر إلى
that's a great photo	إنها صورة رائعة

lessons 3 & 4

black shoes	حذاء أسود
puzzle	لغز
park	منتزه
flowers	زهور
sunny	مشمس
animals	حيوانات
garden	حديقة
sit down ≠ stand up	يجلس ≠ يقف

lessons 5 & 6

shop	محل
parents	الوالدين
telephone number	رقم الهاتف



lessons 1 & 2

aunt	عمة / خالة
uncle	عم / خال
mountain	جبل
bat	خفاش



lessons 1 & 2

Morocco	دولة المغرب
tomatoes	طماطم
rice	أرز

lessons 3 & 4

chicken pizza	بيتزا بالفراخ
fruit juice	عصير فواكه
carrots	جزر

lessons 5 & 6

orange juice	عصير برتقال
bread	خبز
cheese pizza	بيتزا بالجبنة
tomato pizza	بيتزا بالطماطم

Answers of Main Book Paragraphs

إجابات الموضوعات فى كتاب الشرح



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My family"

My name's Ali. I have a big family. My mum's name is Amira. She is a teacher. My dad's name is Omar. He is a doctor. I have two sisters, Sama and Samira. They are twins. I am in preparatory one. I go to Shoubra Preparatory School for boys. Mum helps us to practise our hobbies. My father also tells us funny stories in his free time, so we enjoy staying with our father in his free time. I like my family so much. It is a great family.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Voluntary work"

I like voluntary work. My family say it is a great job in our life. My sister and I do voluntary work on Saturdays afternoon. We help in children's hospital. We play games with the children. We read stories to them, too. It's great work ! You can do voluntary work in many places. For example, you can help orphan children. They really need help. Helping poor people is also important. You can give them money.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"The best person in my family"

I love all my family, but my father is the person I like most. He works hard. He buys new clothes for me every month. He gives me money every day to buy what I need. His life is busy, but he spends much time with me studying new lessons. I love him so much. When I find a problem, I discuss it with him. Also, he helps me to practise different hobbies. He encourages me so much. He is my hero.

Test on unit 1

"A famous gymnast"

Habiba Marzouk is a top gymnast in Africa. She lives in Cairo with her family. Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she trains for 5 or 6 hours. She wants to go to the Olympics. Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy food. All the Egyptians like Habiba and want her to achieve her goal. Last week, I met her and had a selfie with her.

Unit 2

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My favourite subject"

My favourite subject is English. I have English every day at school. My English teacher is Mr Ayman. He is very kind. He helps me a lot. I have an English test weekly. I always get the full mark. I like watching English films on TV. I also borrow some English books from the library. That helps me improve my language a lot. I hope to travel to England to speak English well.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"School rules"

School rules are important. We always wear our school uniform. We always help each other. We always listen to the teachers carefully. We always do our homework. We never forget our pencil cases or notebooks. In the classroom, students don't talk to each other. When

I want to ask our teacher, I put my hand up. It's important to come to school on time. Following the school rules is useful for us

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A day in my life"

I get up at 6 o'clock in the morning every day. I wash my face and have breakfast. I go to school by bus. I have six lessons a day. I come back home at 2:30 p.m. in the afternoon. I do my homework in the evening. I watch TV with my family at weekends. Sometimes, we go to the park and play on Saturdays. I go to bed early. That helps me to get up early.

Test on unit 2

"Jobs I do at home"

I always help my family at home. I get up at seven a.m. I make my bed. I go to school on time. I never get up late. After school, I have my lunch and do my homework. At night, I prepare my bag and go to bed. I don't watch TV the night before school days. At the weekends, I help my mother clean up the house. I also go shopping if my family want something.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My favourite sports star"

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He is 1.75 meters tall. He is quite short for a footballer. He has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He usually has a big smile. He is a fast runner and he scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He gives money to build schools and hospitals. He plays for a team in England. It's called Liverpool Football Club. Many Egyptians watch his matches. They feel very happy when Salah scores goals.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A famous children's story"

My favourite story book is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters in Wonderland. She met the White Rabbit which was always late. She also met the Cheshire Cat which had a big smile. At last, she met the Queen of Hearts. She was always angry and shouted at people. Children like reading stories like this. I sometimes go to the school library to borrow some stories. That's my favourite hobby.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review on my favourite book"

I love reading so much. Last week, I read a book about life in the mountains. The book is good, but there was some information I don't believe it. I asked my teacher. He told me it is a children's story! I understood the idea and told the story to all my friends. They were very surprised when I told them. I think reading is very useful for all people. I advise everyone to read a lot.

Test on unit 3

"My best friend"

I have many friends. But Sameh is my best friend. I met him first at school. He is tall and thin. He has a long, curly hair. He is very kind and funny. We walk to school every day together. He is very good at maths. He always helps me at maths. I help him at English. We both like playing football. We go to the club on Fridays to practise football. Sameh is a real friend. I respect him so much.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Technology"

I love technology. My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone. I'd like to spend all day playing video games, but I have to go to school. My favourite lesson is computer studies. At break, I look at websites for new video games. Modern technology changed our lives a lot. Nowadays, most people use it in many ways. Young people use it all the time.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"I like nature more than technology"

I love nature. I like walking and watching trees, animals, flowers and insects all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside at break. I don't go outside when it's very hot or cold! Also, technology is very important for our life. Technology makes our life easier. Both nature and technology are important for our life.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"My favourite place"

Egypt is a beautiful country. There are many interesting places in it. The Pyramids in Giza are my favourite place.
I like visiting the Pyramids with my family. My father knows a lot about the Pyramids. He likes reading about the ancient Egyptians. He tells us many interesting information each time when we visit the Pyramids. We always take pictures next to the Pyramids and the Sphinx. I am very proud of my country.

Test on unit 4

"How to keep safe online"

When you are online, you need to follow some rules to stay safe. First, keep your password secret. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't tell people your personal information. Don't send photos to people you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher. Don't answer a phone call or a video call from people you don't know. You must be very careful with using modern technology.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A picnic at Al Azhar Park"

In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic at Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food. Then, we played games. My brother, Ali rode his bike. We enjoyed our time. Al Azhar Park is a beautiful place to go to. You can do many activities there. It's really wonderful. I hope to go there one day with my friends. It will be a very nice trip. But we should keep the park clean.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A day on the beach"

Last summer, the weather was very hot. We decided to go to the beach in Hurghada. Hurghada is a beautiful city. My sister Mariam made a sandcastle on the beach. I swam in the sea and climbed the mountains. We enjoyed our time a lot. My mother made us a delicious meal. My father told us some funny stories. It was a typical day. In the evening, I enjoyed the beautiful view on the beach. I'm looking forward to visiting Hurghada again next summer.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A holiday in Paris"

Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails! One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. Near our hotel there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards. People in Paris are so kind. They helped me a lot.

Test on unit 5

"A trip I made"

Last summer, I went on a trip to London with my school. My favourite place was Windsor Castle. We went there by train. We walked around the castle. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye, because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top. This trip helped us to improve our English as we spoke English all the time. It was a very nice trip. We stayed there for two weeks.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Rice pudding"

Roz Bel Laban is an Egyptian rice pudding. Its ingredients are rice, water, milk and sugar. Some people like it very tasty so they add much sugar to it Other people like to add some nuts and raisins on the top. I like to add some cinnamon. You can try to make it by yourself at home; there are many recipes for this dish online. Choose your favourite and you can ask your mum for help.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"My favourite dish"

My favourite dish is koshari. It is a delicious dish with rice, pasta and tomatoes. There isn't any meat in it. It is very popular in Egypt. I love it very much. All my family love it. You can eat this meal in many restaurants. All the Egyptians like this meal. My mother makes it at home once a week. I like it a lot. Also, I have koshari with my friends after playing football on holidays.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A visit to a café"

I visited a nice café with my family and my friends yesterday. It looks over a beautiful view. My mum had fish . My dad and I had pizza with my brother. We had cakes after lunch. I had basbousa and my brother had kunafa. I prefer the café that looks over the Nile. The view is fantastic. I enjoy fresh air. My friends like taking photos from the windows that overlooks the nice view.

Test on unit 6

"A traditional meal in Morocco"

Tagine is a traditional meal in Morocco. It is a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. It has an amazing taste. The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food. If you want to try this meal, you have to visit Morocco. I went to Morocco last month. When I went to a restaurant to have lunch, I ate tagine. It's really delicious. I hope to have it again.

Listening Texts

تصوص استماع

Audioscript

Girl 1 : Hi, Lama. Is that a new bag ?
Girl 2 : Hi, Injy. No, it's my sister's bag.
Girl 1 : It's big. What's in it ?
Girl 2 : This is my pencil case. It's red.
Girl 1 : Is that your book ?
Girl 2 : Yes. It's very good. It's about animals.
Girl 1 : Is that a ball in your bag ?
Girl 2 : No, it's an orange ! I like oranges.
Girl 1 : I prefer apples. Is that your phone ?
Girl 2 : Yes, it is. Look ! It's ten o'clock. Time for our English class.

Audioscript

Narrator :

1. washed, talked
2. called, waited
3. blue, duck
4. cake, home
5. shop, chick
6. father, brother
7. candy, July
8. tail, gate

Unit 1

1 Lessons 1 & 2

I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays. It is my favourite sport. I play it with my friends. It is an interesting sport.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Gymnastics is a difficult sport. The gymnast trains for many hours daily. He must balance his hobby, work and study to achieve his dream.

3 Test on unit 1

Habiba Marzouk lives in Cairo. She has a very busy life. She is a top gymnast in Africa. She wants to go to the Olympics.

Unit 2

1 Lessons 3 & 4

My school is far from my house. I cycle to school every morning. It's healthy and it makes me arrive there on time.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Amira is twelve years old. She is from Hurghada. She is in preparatory one at school. She likes science and maths.

3 Test on unit 2

Akeyo lives in Nairobi. Her school is far away. Her mum and dad drive her there. She goes to the library to read during the break.

Unit 3

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Doaa Elghobashy plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 cm tall. She's strong and fast. She always has a big smile.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

My best friend is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind. He likes reading and playing video games.

3 Test on unit 3

Yunis has got short, dark curly hair. He likes history, but he doesn't like art because he is not good at drawing or painting.

Unit 4

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Ziad is in his classroom. There are two laptops in the classroom. There is a printer, too. Omar is printing his homework.

2 Test on unit 4

Soha loves nature. She likes watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around us. She likes being in the garden and looking at the sky.

Unit 5

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Last week, we had a picnic at Al Azhar Park in Cairo. We ate delicious food. Then, we played games and Ali rode on his bike.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Last summer, Andy travelled to Egypt because she wanted to learn Arabic. She went to a language school in Cairo. She had wonderful time.

3 Test on unit 5

When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake. We saw camels and slept in a tent. It was my favourite holiday.

Unit 6

1 Lessons 1 & 2

There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online. There's enough rice pudding for the whole family. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe but I like sweet food.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

I visited this café last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother. We chose this café for lunch. Its walls were green and white.

3 Test on unit 6

Mazin likes tagine. In Morocco, tagine is a traditional meal. Its taste is amazing! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.

End of term practice

Shorouk is 12. She is in preparatory 1. She goes to school with her sister Lubna. Shorouk's parents are doctors at a hospital.

Answers of Advanced level student's Exercises

إجابات تدريبات طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Unit					
Unit 1 :	1. b	2. d	3. b	4. d	5. b
Unit 2 :	1. c	2. a	3. b	4. b	5. d
Unit 3 :	1. d	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. d
Unit 4 :	1. d	2. a	3. a	4. b	5. c
Unit 5 :	1. a	2. b	3. d	4. a	5. d
Unit 6 :	1. b	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. b

A Follow-up Card

بطاقة متابعة

جزء الهدف منه التقييم اليومي لاستيعاب الطالب للدروس

Sheet 1 On Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2)

1. She is playing the piano in the school ....
   a. band b. ground
   c. magazine d. laboratory
2. Heba is working in a charity. She likes .... work.
   a. maths b. voluntary
   c. school d. pair

2 Read and correct the underlined words : (2)

1. **Does** you play chess ? (..........)
2. Mona usually **get** up early. (..........)

Dictation الإملاء (6)

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لاختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A

band	....	....	توأم
chess	....	....	مباراة كرة قدم
voluntary work	....	....	الجد الأكبر

B

list	....	....	الإنترنت
timetable	....	....	بنك
city	....	....	حديقة عامة

Sheet 2 On Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2)



1. I always go to Paris for a holiday. It is a .... holiday for me.
   a. physical b. musical
   c. typical d. formal
2. The school .... rings at 8 : 00 a.m.
   a. ball b. bell
   c. bill d. pin

2 Read and correct the underlined words : (2)

1. It is **Hudas** notebook. (..........)
2. The **girl name** is Lamees. (..........)

Dictation الإملاء (6)

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لاختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.



A

typical	....	....	جرس
subject	....	....	ملعب
drama	....	....	تربية فنية

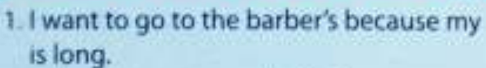
B

school uniform	....	....	قرية
canoe	....	....	ثقافة
snowmobile	....	....	قاس / غير طيب



Sheet 3 On Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2)



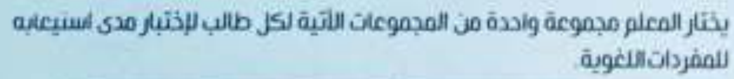
1. I want to go to the barber's because my .... is long.
   a. bread b. bird
   c. beard d. bride
2. Mohammed Salah has got .... hair. It's not straight.
   a. blond b. curly
   c. long d. short

2 Read and correct the underlined words : (2)



1. Does she like **watch** TV ? (........)
2. Do they **loves** learning maths ? (........)

Dictation الإملاء (6)



يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب للإختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية

A

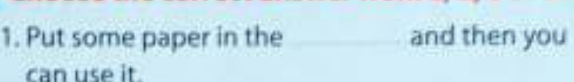
beard	....	....	شعر مجعد
fans	....	....	يحرز / يسجل
straight hair	....	....	طبيعي / عادي

B

sensible	....	....	ماهر
online	....	....	قرارات
learning	....	....	مشغول

Sheet 4 On Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2)



1. Put some paper in the .... and then you can use it.
   a. mouse b. keyboard
   c. printer d. screen
2. When your phone battery is low, you can use the ....
   a. fridge b. charger
   c. TV d. cooker



2 Read and correct the underlined words : (2)

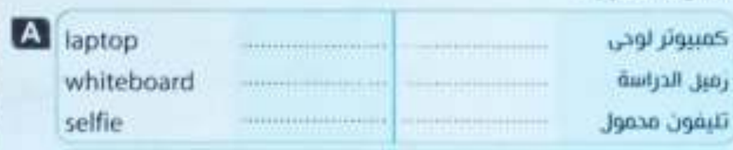


1. Is Salma **wear** glasses ? (........)
2. Malak **watches** TV now. (........)



Dictation الإملاء (6)

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب للإختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.



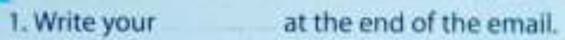
A

laptop	....	....	كمبيوتر لوحي
whiteboard	....	....	زميل الدراسة
selfie	....	....	تليفون محمول

B

lunchtime	....	....	يقلد
eagle	....	....	بالغ من العمر
put up	....	....	أخطاء القواعد





Sheet 5 — On Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2)

1. Write your .... at the end of the email.
   a. address b. title
   c. signature d. age
2. What does this .... mean ? - It means "No parking!".
   a. pan b. email
   c. snail d. sign

2 Read and correct the underlined words : (2)

1. How did you **went** to school ? (..........)
2. Last week, my father **buys** our tickets. (..........)

Dictation الإملاء (6)

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لاختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A

postcard	....	....	لافتة / علامة
boat trip	....	....	رسالة بريد إلكتروني
bat	....	....	شيق

B

response	....	....	سامح
emotion	....	....	توقع
repeat	....	....	يستمر

Sheet 6 — On Unit 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2)

1. A .... works in a restaurant.
   a. teacher b. doctor
   c. nurse d. waiter
2. Give me the .... to choose my favourite meal.
   a. list b. ticket
   c. menu d. passport

2 Read and correct the underlined words : (2)

1. You should **to clean** your teeth in the morning. (..........)
2. You **shouldn't** drink a lot of water every day. (..........)

Dictation الإملاء (6)

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لاختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A

menu	....	....	بيتزا بالجبنة
large salad	....	....	زيتون
waiter	....	....	عصير برتقال

B

chef	....	....	وجبة
weekend	....	....	يشمل / يتضمن
details	....	....	طازج